



3ware[®]

Serial ATA RAID Controller

Supports the 9550SX and 9590SE Models

PN 720-0126-04
April 2006

User Guide

Copyright

©2004-2006 Applied Micro Circuits Corporation (AMCC). All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the proper written consent of AMCC, 215 Moffett Park Drive, Sunnyvale, CA 94089.

Trademarks

3ware®, Escalade®, and 3DM® are all registered trademarks of AMCC. The 3ware logo, 3BM, StorSwitch, TwinStor, and R5 Fusion are all trademarks of AMCC. All other trademarks herein are property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

While every attempt is made to make this document as accurate as possible, AMCC assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions in this document, nor does AMCC make any commitment to update the information contained herein.

Table of Contents

About This Guide	v
How this Guide is Organized	v
Conventions	vii
Chapter 1. Introducing the 3ware® 9000 Series Controller	1
Product Models and Features	1
What's New with 9550SX and 9590SE Models	2
System Requirements	3
Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels	5
Available RAID Configurations	6
Determining What RAID Level to Use	9
3ware Tools for Configuration and Management	12
3BM (3ware BIOS Manager)	12
3DM 2 (3ware Disk Manager)	12
3ware CLI (Command Line Interface)	13
Monitoring, Maintenance, and Troubleshooting Features	13
Chapter 2. Getting Started with Your 3ware RAID Controller	15
Chapter 3. First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM	19
Basic Steps for Creating a Unit	19
Specifying a Hot Spare	27
Leaving Individual Drives as JBODs	27
Checking the Motherboard Boot Sequence	28
What Next?	28
Chapter 4. Driver Installation	29
Driver Installation Under Windows	30
Materials Required	30
Creating a 3ware Driver Diskette	31
Installing the 3ware Driver and Windows on a New Unit	31
Installing the Driver on a System that Boots from a Different Device	32
Making Units Managed by a 3ware Controller Available to Windows	37
Driver Installation Under Linux	38
Obtaining 3ware Linux Drivers	39
Driver Installation Under Red Hat Linux or Fedora Core 4	40
Driver Installation Under SuSE Linux	45
Compiling a 3ware Driver for Linux	48
Driver Installation Under FreeBSD	49
Obtaining 3ware FreeBSD Drivers	49
Installing the Driver under FreeBSD	50
Chapter 5. 3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2)	55
Starting 3BM 2	55
Exiting the 3BM Configuration Utility	57
Working in the 3BM Screens	58
Adjusting BIOS Loading Settings	61
Displaying Controller Information	63
Getting Help While Using 3BM	63

Chapter 6. 3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)	65
Browser Requirements for 3DM	66
Setting up Mozilla	66
Installing 3DM	67
Installing 3DM on a Microsoft Windows system	67
Uninstalling 3DM under Microsoft Windows	70
Installing 3DM for Linux or FreeBSD	70
Uninstalling 3DM under Linux or FreeBSD	72
Starting 3DM and Logging In	73
Starting 3DM under Linux	73
Starting 3DM under Microsoft Windows	73
Viewing 3DM Remotely via a Standard Web Browser	74
Logging In	75
Working with the 3DM Screens	76
3DM Menus	77
Viewing Information About Different Controllers in 3DM	78
Refreshing the Screen	78
3DM Screens and What They're Used For	78
Setting Up 3DM Preferences	80
Setting and Changing 3DM Passwords	80
Managing E-mail Event Notification	81
Enabling and Disabling Remote Access	82
Setting the Incoming Port #	83
Setting the Frequency of Page Refreshes	83
3DM 2 Reference	84
Controller Summary Page	84
Controller Details Page	86
Unit Information Page	87
Unit Details Page	89
Drive Information Page	90
Drive Details Window	92
Controller Settings Page	93
Scheduling Page	98
Maintenance Page	100
Alarms Page	109
Battery Backup Page	110
3DM 2 Settings Page	112
Chapter 7. Configuring Your Controller	115
Viewing Information About Individual Controllers	115
Viewing and Setting Controller Policies	117
Viewing Controller Policies	118
Setting the Auto-Rebuild Policy	120
Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support	121
Setting the Size of Volumes Created with Auto-Carving	123
Enabling and Setting Up Staggered Spin-up	124
Exporting JBOD Disks	125
Disabling Write Cache on Unit Degrade	126
Chapter 8. Configuring Units	127
Configuring a New Unit	128
Configuration Options When Creating a Unit	128
Creating a Unit through 3DM	130
Creating a Unit through 3BM	133
Ordering Units in 3BM	137
Partitioning and Formatting Units	137

Creating a Hot Spare	139
Specifying a Hot Spare through 3DM	140
Specifying a Hot Spare through 3BM	140
Naming a Unit	141
Setting Unit Policies	142
Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache	143
Setting Auto-Verify for a Unit	145
Setting Continue on Source Error During Rebuild	146
Enabling and Disabling Queuing for a Unit	147
Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit	149
Changing An Existing Configuration	151
RAID Level Migration (RLM) Overview	152
Changing RAID Level	153
Expanding Unit Capacity	154
Informing the Operating System of Changed Configuration	155
Deleting a Unit	157
Deleting a Unit through 3DM	157
Deleting a Unit through 3BM	159
Removing a Unit	161
Removing a Unit Through 3DM	161
Removing a Unit Through 3BM	162
Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another	163
Unlocking Drives Configured on a 9500S Controller	164
Moving Units from an 8000 Controller to a 9000 Controller	164
Moving Legacy JBOD Units to a 9000 Controller	166
Moving Units from a 9500S to a 9550SX or 9590SE Controller	166
Adding a Drive through 3DM	168
Removing a Drive	169
Rescanning the Controller	171
Chapter 9. Maintaining Units	173
Checking Unit and Drive Status through 3DM	173
Reviewing Alarms and Errors	175
Viewing Alarms	175
Downloading an Error Log	176
Viewing SMART Data About a Drive	176
About Background Tasks	177
About Initialization	177
Initialization of Different RAID Types	178
Auto Initialization After Power Failure	179
About Rebuilds	180
About Verification	181
About Migration	182
About Self-tests	183
Setting Background Task Rate	183
Scheduling Background Tasks	184
Viewing Current Task Schedules	185
Turning On or Off Use of a Task Schedule	186
Removing a Task Schedule	187
Adding a New Task Schedule Slot	188
Selecting Self-tests to be Performed	188
Rebuilding Units	189
Rebuilding a Unit Through 3DM	190
Rebuilding Units through 3BM	191
Cancelling a Rebuild and Restarting It with a Different Drive	194
Verifying Units	194

Locating a Drive by Blinking Its LED	196
Chapter 10. Maintaining Your Controller	199
Determining the Current Version of Your 3ware Driver	199
Updating the Driver and Firmware	200
Updating the 3ware Driver and Firmware Under Windows	201
Using the Update Utility With Multiple Controllers	206
Updating the 3ware Driver Under Windows XP	207
Updating the 3ware Driver Under Red Hat	213
Updating the 3ware Driver Under SuSE	214
Updating the 3ware Driver Under FreeBSD	216
Updating the Firmware Under Linux and FreeBSD	216
Viewing Battery Information	218
Testing Battery Capacity	219
Chapter 11. Troubleshooting	221
Before Contacting Customer Support	221
Problems and Solutions	222
Software Installation	222
Problems in 3DM	223
AEN Messages	224
AEN Error Message Summary	224
AEN Error Message Details	227
Chapter A. Glossary.....	243
Chapter B. Compliance and Conformity Statements	249
Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency Interference Statement	249
Microsoft Windows Hardware Quality Lab (WHQL)	250
European Community Conformity Statement	250
Chapter C. Warranty, Technical Support, and Service.....	251
Limited Warranty	251
Exclusions	252
State Law Provisions	252
Warranty Service and RMA Process	252
AMCC Technical Support and Services	253
Sales and ordering information	253
Feedback on this manual	253
Index	255

About This Guide

3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller User Guide provides instructions for configuring and maintaining your 3ware 9000 series controller.

This guide assumes that you have already installed your controller in your system. If you have not yet done so, see the installation guide that came with your controller. You can download the installation guide from You can download that guide from: <http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>. (Note that there are different installation guides for the 9590SE, the 9550SX, and the 9500S.)

How this Guide is Organized

There are often multiple ways to accomplish the same configuration and maintenance tasks for your 3ware RAID controller. This manual includes instructions for performing tasks using two tools: one at the BIOS level (3ware BIOS Manager 2, or 3BM 2) and one that runs in a browser (3ware Disk Manager 2, or 3DM 2). You can also perform many tasks at the command line, using 3ware's Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI is described in a separate manual, available from the 3ware software CD and from 3ware's website: *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Basic information about using the two tools (3BM 2 and 3DM 2), such as starting the tool, navigating between screens, and so forth, is described in sections about each of those tools: "3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2)" on page 55 and "3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)" on page 65.

Step-by-step instructions for performing specific tasks are organized by tasks throughout other sections of this guide. For example, the instructions for "Configuring a New Unit" on page 128 include information about how to create a unit from 3DM, followed by how to create a unit from 3BM.

Table 1: Chapters in this Guide

Chapter	Description
1. Introduction	Provides an overview of product features for the 3ware 9000 series controllers. Includes system requirements and an introduction to RAID concepts and levels.
2. Getting Started	Provides a summary of the steps required to install and set up your 3ware RAID controller.
3. First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM	Provides step-by-step instructions for configuring RAID units if you have just installed the controller.
4. Driver Installation	Describes how to install drivers for the 3ware controller if you have just installed and configured it. Includes information for Windows, Linux, and FreeBSD.
5. 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM)	Describes the basics of using 3BM.
6. 3ware Disk Manager 2 (3DM 2)	Describes the basics of using 3DM and includes a reference of all the 3DM pages.
7. Configuring Your Controller	Describes how to view details about the controller, check its status, and change configuration settings that affect the controller and all associated drives.
8. Configuring Units	Describes how to configure new units and spares, change existing configurations, and set unit policies.
9. Maintaining Units	Describes how to check unit and drive status, review alarms and errors, schedule background maintenance tasks, and manually start them, when necessary or desirable. Includes explanations of initialization, verify, rebuild, and self-tests.
10. Maintaining Your Controller	Describes how to update the driver, move a unit from one controller to another, and replace an existing 3ware controller with a new one. Also includes information about checking battery status on a BBU (Battery Backup Unit).
11. Troubleshooting	Provides common problems and solutions, and explains error messages.
A. Glossary	Includes definitions for terms used throughout this guide.
B. Compliance and Conformity Statements	Provides compliance and conformity statement.
C. Warranty, Technical Support, and Service	Provides warranty information and tells you how to contact technical support.

Conventions

The following conventions are used through this guide:

- 3BM and 3BM 2 both refer to the 3ware BIOS Manager, version 2.
- 3DM and 3DM 2 both refer to the 3ware Disk Manager, version 2.
- In the sections that describe using 3DM, *current controller* is used to refer to the controller which is currently selected in this drop-down list.
- *Unit* refers to one or more disks configured through 3ware to be treated by the operating system as a single drive. Also known as an array. Array and unit are used interchangeably throughout this manual.
- **Boldface** is used for buttons, fields, and settings that appear on the screen.
- `Monospace font` is used for code and to indicate things you type.



Introducing the 3ware® 9000 Series Controller

3ware 9550SX and 9590SE controllers are part of the AMCC 3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA family of controllers.

This chapter introduces the features and concepts of the 9000 series as a whole, and the 9550SX and 9590SE models in particular. It includes the following sections:

- “Product Models and Features” on page 1
- “What’s New with 9550SX and 9590SE Models” on page 2
- “System Requirements” on page 3
- “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5
- “Determining What RAID Level to Use” on page 9

Product Models and Features

The 3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA family of controllers includes the models shown in Table 2.

Table 2: 3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA Controller Models

Series	4-port	8-port	12-port	16-port
9500S	9500S-4LP ^a	9500S-8 9500S-8MI ^b	9500S-12 9500S-12MI	
9550SX	9550SX-4LP	9550SX-8LP	9550SX-12 9550SX-12MI	9550SX-16ML ^c
9590SE		9590SE-8ML	9590SE-12ML	9590SE-16ML

a. LP indicates a low-profile controller card

b. MI indicates a multilane SFF-8470 connector

c. ML indicates a multilane SFF-8087 connector

Features of the 3ware 9000 series controllers include:

- Advanced RAID features for greater data protection and management.
- Support for battery backup provides added data protection in the event of a power outage. (Battery Backup unit sold separately)
- Support for RAID units greater than 2 terabytes with 64-bit LBA support.
- An enhanced firmware platform allows future upgrades.
- AMCC's remote management software, 3ware Disk Manager 2 (3DM®2) simplifies storage configuration and management through a web browser.

What's New with 9550SX and 9590SE Models

The 9550SX and 9590SE models in 3ware's 9000 series of RAID controllers have the following features and benefits:

- 200% faster than the industry-leading 3ware 9500S RAID controller
- PCI-X (for 9550SX) or PCI Express (for 9590SE) connectivity
- 7th generation StorSwitch(TM) technology
- Support for 3Gbps and Native Command Queuing (NCQ)
- StorSave II profiles let you set the desired level of protection versus performance for a unit
- Drive Locate allows you to easily identify a drive by blinking the LED associated with it when you have a chassis that supports it
- Improved BIOS control lets you determine the level detail to display at power-up
- Ability to define the size of the boot volume.
- Ability to define a carving size to be used when carving units into volumes.

System Requirements

3ware RAID controllers require the following

- **A workstation-class or server-class motherboard**

**Notes:**

While the 3ware 9550SX RAID controller can be installed in both 64-bit PCI and PCI-X slots, not all slots give equal performance.

The 3ware 9550SX Controller performs best when installed in a PCI-X 133MHz 64-bit slot. However, it can also operate at 66MHz or 100MHz.

9590SE RAID controllers **must** be installed in a PCI Express slot (x4, x8, or x16).

- **Drives**

Depending on the particular model, the 3ware RAID controller may be connected to up to four, eight, twelve, or sixteen SATA drives using the supplied interface cables.

Drives must meet serial ATA 150 (SATA-1) or serial ATA 300 (SATA 2) Gb/s standards. Drives may be of any capacity or physical form factor.

The length of shielded and unshielded interface cables may not exceed 1M (39") for Serial ATA controllers.

- **Operating System**

3ware RAID controllers may be used with:

- Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, both 32-bit and 64-bit x86
- Red Hat Linux, 32-bit and 64-bit x86
- SuSE Linux, 32-bit and 64-bit x86
- Fedora Core
- Other versions of Linux using the open source Linux driver (see the Release Notes for the latest versions)
- FreeBSD, 32-bit and 64-bit x86

- **Other Requirements**

- Adequate air flow and cooling
- Adequate power supply for drives

3DM 2 (3ware Disk Manager) displays information in a browser. It requires the following:

- One of these browsers:

- Internet Explorer 5.5 and later
- Mozilla 1.2 and later
- Firefox 1.02 and later
- Netscape 7 and later
- JavaScript must be enabled
- Cookies must be enabled
- For best viewing, screen resolution should be 1024 x 768, with 16-bit color or more

For a complete listing of features and system requirements, refer to the 9550SX Series Datasheet or the 9590SE Series Datasheet, available from the website at

http://www.3ware.com/products/serial_ata9000.asp.

Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels

3ware RAID controllers use a Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks (RAID) to increase your storage system's performance and provide fault tolerance (protection against data loss).

The following concepts are important to understand when working with a RAID controller:

- **Arrays and Units.** In the storage industry, the term “array” is used to describe two or more disk drives that appear to the operating system as a single unit. When you work with 3ware software, “unit” is the term used to refer to an array of disks that is configured and managed through the 3ware software. Single-disk units can also be configured in the 3ware software.
- **Mirroring.** Mirrored arrays write data to paired drives simultaneously. If one drive fails, the data is preserved on the paired drive. Mirroring provides data protection through redundancy. In addition, mirroring using a 3ware RAID controller provides improved performance because 3ware's TwinStor technology reads from both drives simultaneously.
- **Striping.** Striping across disks allows data to be written and accessed on more than one drive, at the same time. Striping combines each drive's capacity into one large volume. Striped disk arrays achieve highest transfer rates and performance at the expense of fault tolerance.
- **Distributed Parity.** Parity works in combination with striping on RAID 5 and RAID 6. Parity information is written to each of the striped drives, in rotation. Should a failure occur, the data on the failed drive can be reconstructed from the data on the other drives.
- **Hot Swap.** The process of exchanging a drive without having to shut down the system. This is useful when you need to exchange a degraded drive or a bad drive in a redundant array.
- **Array Roaming.** The process of swapping out or swapping in a configured unit without having to shut down the system. This is useful if you need to move the unit to another controller.
- **Disk Roaming.** The process of removing a unit from a controller and putting it back later, either on the same controller, or a different one, and having it recognized as a unit. The disks may be attached to different ports than they were originally attached to, without harm to the data. The disks may be attached to the same ports or different ports on the controller.

For definitions of other terms used throughout the documentation, see the “Glossary”.

Available RAID Configurations

The following RAID levels and configurations are available for drives attached to a 3ware RAID controller:

- RAID 0
- RAID 1
- RAID 5
- RAID 10
- RAID 50
- Single Disk
- JBOD
- Hot Spare

RAID 0

Provides striping, but no mirroring or redundancy of any kind. Striped disk arrays achieve high transfer rates because they can read and write data on more than one drive simultaneously. The stripe size is configurable in the 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM) and in the 3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2). Requires a minimum of two drives.

When drives are configured in a striped disk array (see Figure 1), large files are distributed across the multiple disks using RAID 0 techniques.

Striped disk arrays give exceptional performance, particularly for data intensive applications such as video editing, computer aided design and geographical information systems.

RAID 0 arrays are not fault tolerant. The loss of any drive results in the loss of all the data in that array, and can even cause a system hang, depending on your operating system. RAID 0 arrays are not recommended for high availability systems unless additional precautions are taken to prevent system hangs and data loss.

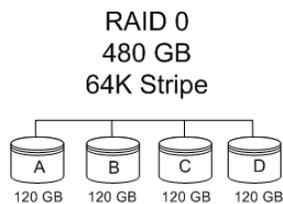


Figure 1. RAID 0 Configuration Example

RAID 1

Also known as a mirrored array. Mirroring is done on pairs of drives. Mirrored disk arrays write data to two drives using RAID 1 algorithms (see Figure 2). This gives your system fault tolerance by preserving the data on one drive if the other drive fails. Fault tolerance is a basic requirement for mission critical systems like web and database servers.

3ware uses a patented technology, TwinStor®, on RAID 1 arrays for improved performance during sequential read operations. With TwinStor technology, read performance is twice the speed of a single drive during sequential read operation.

The adaptive algorithms in TwinStor technology boost performance by distinguishing between random and sequential read requests. For the sequential requests generated when accessing large files, both drives are used, with the heads simultaneously reading alternating sections of the file. For the smaller random transactions, the data is read from a single optimal drive head.

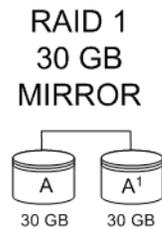


Figure 2. RAID 1 Configuration Example

RAID 5

Combines striping data with parity (exclusive OR) to restore data in case of a drive failure. This array type provides performance, fault tolerance, high capacity, and storage efficiency. Requires a minimum of three drives.

Parity information is distributed across all drives rather than being concentrated on a single disk (see Figure 3). This avoids throughput loss due to contention for the parity drive.

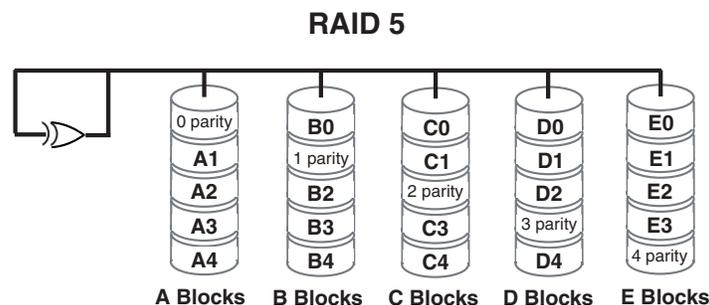


Figure 3. RAID 5 Configuration Example

RAID 10

This array is a combination of RAID 1 with RAID 0. Striped and mirrored arrays for fault tolerance and high performance. Requires a minimum of four drives to use both RAID 0 and RAID 1 techniques.

When drives are configured as a striped mirrored array, the disks are configured using both RAID 0 and RAID 1 techniques, thus the name RAID 10 (see Figure 4). A minimum of four drives are required to use this technique. The first two drives are mirrored as a fault tolerant array using RAID 1. The third and fourth drives are mirrored as a second fault tolerant array using RAID 1. The two mirrored arrays are then grouped as a striped RAID 0 array using a two tier structure. Higher data transfer rates are achieved by leveraging TwinStor and striping the arrays.

In addition, RAID 10 arrays offer a higher degree of fault tolerance than other types of RAID levels (such as RAID 1 and RAID 5), since the array can sustain multiple drive failures without data loss. For example, in a twelve drive RAID 10 array, up to six drives can fail (half of each mirrored pair) and the array will continue to function. Please note that if both halves of a mirrored pair in the RAID 10 array fail, then all of the data will be lost.

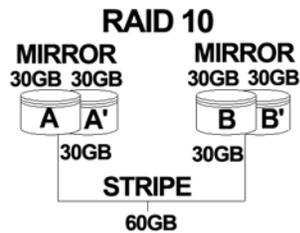


Figure 4. RAID 10 Configuration Example

RAID 50

This array is a combination of RAID 5 with RAID 0. This array type provides fault tolerance and high performance. Requires a minimum of six drives.

Several combinations are available with RAID 50. For example, on a 12-port controller, you can have a grouping of 3, 4, or 6 drives. A grouping of 3 means that the RAID 5 arrays used have 3 disks each; four of these 3-drive RAID 5 arrays are striped together to form the 12-drive RAID 50 array.

In addition, RAID 50 arrays offer a higher degree of fault tolerance than other types of RAID levels (such as RAID 1 and RAID 5), since the array can sustain multiple drive failures without data loss. For example, in a twelve drive RAID 50 array, up to one drive in each RAID 5 set can fail and the array will continue to function. Please note that if two or more drives in a RAID 5 set fail, then all of the data will be lost.

Single Disk

A single drive that has been configured as a unit through 3ware software. (3BM, 3DM 2, or CLI). Like disks in other RAID configurations, single disks contain 3ware Disk Control Block (DCB) information and are seen by the OS as available units.

Single drives are not fault tolerant and therefore not recommended for high availability systems unless additional precautions are taken to prevent system hangs and data loss.

JBOD

A JBOD is an unconfigured disk attached to your 3ware RAID controller. JBOD configuration is no longer supported in the 3ware 9000 series. AMCC recommends that you use Single Disk as a replacement for JBOD, to take advantage of advanced features such as caching, OCE, and RLM.

JBOD units are not fault tolerant and therefore not recommended for high availability systems unless additional precautions are taken to prevent system hangs and data loss.

Hot Spare

A single drive, available online, so that a redundant array can be automatically rebuilt in case of drive failure.

For additional information about RAID levels, see the article “RAID Primer” on the 3ware website, at:

http://www.3ware.com/products/pdf/RAID_Primer.pdf.

Determining What RAID Level to Use

Select the RAID configuration to use based on the applications to be used on the system, whether performance or data protection is of primary importance, and the number of disk drives available for use.

Review the information under “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5 to determine the type of RAID configuration most appropriate for your needs and use the tables below to determine what RAID levels are available, based on your particular controller model and the number of available drives.

The RAID configurations available to you are determined by the number of ports on your controller, and the number of drives attached to those ports. You can configure all drives in one unit, or you can configure multiple units, if you have enough drives.

Table 3: Possible Configurations Based on # of Drives

# Drives	Possible RAID Configurations
1	Single drive or hot spare
2	RAID 0 or RAID 1
3	RAID 0 RAID 1 with hot spare RAID 5
4	RAID 5 + hot spare RAID 10 Combination of RAID 0, RAID 1, single disk
5	RAID 5 + hot spare RAID 10 + hot spare Combination of RAID 0, RAID 1, hot spare, for single disk
6 or more	RAID 50 Depending on the number of drives, a RAID 50 may contain from 2 to 4 subunits. For example, with 12 drives, possible RAID 50 configurations include 2 subunits of 6, 3 subunits of 4, or 4 subunits of 3. With 10 drives, a RAID 50 will contain 2 subunits of 5 drives each. With 16 drives, a RAID 50 will contain 2 subunits of 8 drives or 4 subunits of 4 drives. Combination of RAID 0, 1, 5, 10, hot spare, and single disk

Drive Capacity Considerations

The capacity of each drive is limited to the capacity of the smallest drive in the array. The total array capacity is defined as follows:

Table 4: Drive Capacity

RAID Level	Capacity
RAID 0	(number of drives) X (capacity of the smallest drive)
RAID 1	capacity of the smallest drive
RAID 5	(number of drives - 1) X (capacity of the smallest drive) Storage efficiency increases with the number of disks: storage efficiency = (number of drives - 1)/(number of drives)
RAID 10	(number of drives / 2) X (capacity of smallest drive)

Table 4: Drive Capacity

RAID Level	Capacity
RAID 50	(number of drives - number of groups of drives) X (capacity of the smallest drive)

Through drive coercion, the capacity used for each drive is rounded down so that drives from differing manufacturers are more likely to be able to be used as spares for each other. The capacity used for each drive is rounded down to the nearest GB for drives under 45 GB (45,000,000,000), and rounded down to the nearest 5 GBytes for drives over 45 GB. For example, a 44.3 GB drive will be rounded down to 44 GBytes, and a 123 GB drives will be rounded down to 120 GBytes. For more information, see the discussion of drive coercion under “Creating a Hot Spare” on page 139.

Support for Over 2 Terabytes

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Linux 2.4, and FreeBSD 4.x, do not currently recognize unit capacity in excess of 2 TB.

If the combined capacity of the drives to be connected to a unit exceeds 2 Terabytes (TB), you can enable auto-carving when you configure your units.

Auto-carving divides the available unit capacity into multiple chunks of 2 TB or smaller that can be addressed by the operating systems as separate volumes. The carve size is adjustable from 1024 MB to 2048 MB (default) prior to unit creation.

If a unit over 2 TB was created prior to enabling the auto-carve option, its capacity visible to the operating system will still be 2TB; no additional capacity will be registered. To change this, the unit has to be recreated.

For more information, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

3ware Tools for Configuration and Management

3ware software tools lets you easily configure the drives attached to your 3ware RAID controller, specifying which drives should be used together as a RAID unit and the type of RAID configuration you want, and designating hot spares for use if a drive degrades.

3ware provides several tools for use in configuring and managing units attached to the 3ware controller:

- 3BM (3ware BIOS Manager)
- 3DM 2 (3ware Disk Manager)
- 3ware CLI (Command Line Interface)

3BM (3ware BIOS Manager)

3BM is a BIOS level tool for creating, deleting, and maintaining disk arrays, rebuilding arrays, designating hot spares, and setting controller policies. 3BM is the tool most frequently used to configure units immediately after installation of the controller, but can also be used after installation to maintain the controller and associated drives.

For general information about working with 3BM, see Chapter 5, “3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2)”.

3DM 2 (3ware Disk Manager)

3DM is a daemon (under Linux) and a service (under Windows) which runs in the background on the controller’s host system, and can be accessed through a web browser to provide ongoing monitoring and administration of the controller and associated drives. 3DM supports hot spare and hot swap for redundant units.

3DM can be used locally (on the system that contains the 9000) or remotely (on a system connected via a network to the system containing the 9000).

For details about working with 3DM, see “3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)” on page 65.

3DM 2 is the current version of the 3ware Disk Manager. Throughout this documentation, it is referred to interchangeably as 3DM and 3DM 2.

3ware CLI (Command Line Interface)

The 3ware CLI provides the functionality available in 3DM through a Command Line Interface. You can view unit status and version information and perform maintenance functions such as adding or removing drives, and reconfiguring RAID units online. You also use it to remotely administer controllers in a system by first logging into the system.

The 3ware CLI is described in *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Monitoring, Maintenance, and Troubleshooting Features

Several 3ware RAID controller features aid in monitoring and troubleshooting your drives.

- **SMART Monitoring** (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) automatically checks a disk drive's health every 24 hours and reports potential problems. This allows you to take proactive steps to prevent impending disk crashes. SMART data is checked on all disk drives (array members, single disks, and hot spares). Monitoring of SMART thresholds can be turned on and off in 3DM. (For details, see “Viewing SMART Data About a Drive” on page 176.)
- **Staggered Spinup** allows drives that support this feature to be powered-up into the standby power management state to minimize in-rush current at power-up and to allow the controller to sequence the spin-up of drives. Both SATAII OOB and ATA spin-up methods are supported. The standby power management state is persistent after power-down and power-up. You can set the number of drives that will spin up at the same time, and the time between staggers in 3BM (the 3ware BIOS Management utility). For details, see “Enabling and Setting Up Staggered Spin-up” on page 124.
- **Verification and Media Scans.** The verify task verifies all redundant units, and checks for media errors on single disks, spares, JBODS and RAID 0 unit members. If the disk drive is part of a redundant unit, error locations that are found and are deemed repairable are rewritten with the redundant data. This forces the drive firmware to reallocate the error sectors accordingly.
- **Error Correction.** Bad sectors can be dynamically repaired through error correction (Dynamic Sector Repair). Reallocation of blocks will try to be based intelligently on the location of the block in relation to the stripe.
- **Scheduled Background Tasks.** Initialize, rebuild, verify, and self-test tasks can all be run in the background, at scheduled times. This lets you

choose a time for these tasks to be run when it will be least disruptive to your system. You can also define the rate at which background tasks are performed, specifying whether I/O tasks should be given more processing time, or background rebuild and verify tasks should be given more processing time.

- **Write Cache.** Write cache can be enabled or disabled using 3BM 2, 3DM 2 and CLI. When write cache is enabled, data will be stored in system cache, 3ware controller cache, and drive cache before the data is committed to disk. This allows the system to process multiple write commands at the same time, thus improving performance. However when data is stored in cache, it could be lost if a power failure occurred. With a Battery Backup Unit (BBU) installed, the cache stored on the 3ware controller can be restored.
- **StorSave Profiles** allow you to set the level of protection versus performance that is desired for a unit when write cache is enabled (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only). For more information, see “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149.
- **Drive Locate.** When the I²C port on the controller has been connected to a chassis with a Chassis Control Unit (CCU), you can issue drive locate commands that blink the LEDs for particular drives, so that you can quickly identify what drive needs to be checked or replaced (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only).
- **Auto-Rebuild.** For times when you do not have a spare available, setting the auto-rebuild policy allows rebuilds to occur with an available drive or with a failed drive (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only).

Getting Started with Your 3ware RAID Controller

Setting up your 3ware RAID controller involves these main steps:

- Physically Install the Controller and Drives
- Configure the RAID Unit and Drives
- Install the Driver and Make the Operating System Aware of the New Drives
- Set Up Management and Maintenance Features

Once the controller and drives have been physically installed, the order in which you perform these steps depends in part on whether one of the units you configure will act as your boot drive.

Physically Install the Controller and Drives

To install your controller and drives, follow the instructions in the installation guide that came with your controller. If you do not have a hardcopy of the installation manual, you can download it from the 3ware website at <http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>.

Configure the RAID Unit and Drives

You may want to review the information under “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5 before configuring your drives. This information will help you choose the appropriate RAID level for your situation.

If you will install the operating system on and boot from a drive managed through the new 3ware RAID controller, use the 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM) to define the configuration. You will find step-by-step instructions in Chapter 3, “First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM.” Information about using 3BM is also included in the later chapters of this user guide, but Chapter 3 offers a sequential set of steps for initial installation.

If the operating system is already installed on another drive in your system, you can configure units through 3BM, through 3ware Disk Manager (3DM), or through the Command Line Interface (CLI). If you want to use 3DM or the

CLI for configuration, go ahead and boot to the OS, install the driver and the 3DM 2 software, and then configure your units. You may want to refer to the following information:

- Chapter 6, “3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)”
- Chapter 8, “Configuring Units”
- *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*, available from the CD-ROM and from the website
<http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>

Install the Driver and Make the Operating System Aware of the New Drives

Instructions for installing drivers are available in Chapter 4, “Driver Installation.”

You will also find instructions for updating the driver under “Updating the Driver and Firmware” on page 200.

Set Up Management and Maintenance Features

3ware RAID controllers come with software that include a number of features to help you manage and maintain the controller and your configured units. The default settings for these features allow you to begin using your newly configured units right away. You can review and change these features as a final step in your initial setup, or you can make changes to them later, at your convenience. These features include:

- Controller and unit policies, such as staggered spinup, use of write cache, use of queueing mode, selection of a StorSave profile, and specifying how unconfigured disks (JBODs) are handled
- Email notification of alarms and other events
- Schedules for when background tasks will be performed, to minimize the impact on day-to-day performance during peak usage times.

Details about these features are described in this user guide and can be looked up individually. When you first set up your controller, you may want to review these sections in particular:

- “Configuring Your Controller” on page 115
- “Setting Unit Policies” on page 142
- “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183
- “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184

Table 5: Initial Default Settings for Policies

Policy	Default Value	Where to Change
Controller-Level Settings		
Auto-Rebuild	Enabled	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Auto-Carving	Disabled	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Carve Size or Factor	2048	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Drives Per Spinup	1	3BM, CLI
Delay Between Spinup	6 seconds	3BM, CLI
Export Unconfigured (JBOD) Disks	Disabled	3BM, CLI
Disable Cache on Degraded Array (does not apply to 9550SX and 9590SE controllers because this feature is integrated into StorSave Profile)	Enabled	CLI, 9.2 version of 3BM (not 3BM 2)
Staggered Method	ATA-6	3BM
Staggered Spinup	Enabled	3BM
Unit-Level Settings		
Auto-Verify	Disabled	3DM, CLI
Continue on Source Error During Rebuild	Disabled	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Boot Volume Size	Blank	3BM
Queuing (NCQ)	Disabled	3BM, 3DM, CLI
StorSave Profile	Protection	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Write Cache	Enabled	3BM, 3DM, CLI
Background Task Settings		
Verify Task Schedules	Daily, starting at 12:00 am and running for 24 hours	3DM, CLI
Follow Verify Task Schedule	No	3DM, CLI
Rebuild Task Schedules	Daily, starting at 12:00 am and running for 24 hours	3DM, CLI
Follow Rebuild Task Schedule	No	3DM, CLI
Self-test Task Schedules	Daily, starting at 12:00 am and running for 24 hours	3DM, CLI
Follow Self-test Task Schedule	Yes	3DM, CLI

First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM

If you will install the operating system on and boot from a unit managed through the new 3ware RAID controller, follow the steps in this chapter to use the 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM) to configure the unit and install the driver.

If the operating system is already installed on another drive in your system, you can use the steps below or you can configure units through 3DM or the CLI.

You can create one or more units on a single controller, depending on the number of drives that the specific 3ware RAID controller supports and the number of drives attached. (For more information, see “Determining What RAID Level to Use” on page 9.)

Basic Steps for Creating a Unit

The process of configuring your RAID units includes these main steps, which are detailed in the step-by-step example:

- Launch 3BM (3ware BIOS Manager)
- Select the drives to be included and indicate that you want to create a disk unit
- Select the desired RAID configuration
- Set other parameters, depending on the type of RAID configuration
- Confirm the unit configuration
- Save your changes and finish up



Note: If the capacity of the unit you create will exceed 2TB and you are using Windows 2000, Windows XP, Linux 2.4, or FreeBSD 4.x, you will need to enable auto-carving. Before creating your unit, follow the instructions under “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

To launch 3BM

- 1 Power up or reboot your system.

While the system is starting, watch for a screen similar to Figure 5.

```

----Press <Alt-3> to access 3ware BIOS Manager ----
3ware ATA RAID Controller: 9590SE-12
BIOS: BE9X X.XX.XX.XXX   Firmware: FE9X X.XX.XX.XXX
BBU Status: Not Present
Number of online units: 1, available drives: 0, hot spare: 0, offline units:0

Exportable Units:
 3drive 64K RAID5          558.77GB (PrimaryRAID5)
  Port0  Maxtor             7B300S0          279.48 GB
  Port1  Maxtor             7B300S0          279.48 GB
  Port2  Maxtor             7B300S0          279.48 GB

```

Figure 5. 3ware BIOS Screen

- 2 Press **Alt-3** immediately to bring up the **3ware BIOS Manager (3BM)**.
Normally your 3ware configuration remains on-screen for just a few seconds. However, if a unit has degraded, the screen indicates the problem and remains on your screen longer.
- 3 If you have more than one 9000-series controller in your system, a screen lists the available boards. (See Figure 6.) In this case, highlight the board with which you want to work and press **Enter**.

```

AMCC Boards selection
Board at slot: 2
Board at slot: 3

⌘ Previous/Next   Enter Go into highlighted board
                  Esc  Cancel          F8 Done

```

Figure 6. 3ware Controller Board Selection Screen

You see a screen similar to Figure 7, warning you that changing your disk array configuration may overwrite data on the disks.

- 4 If you plan to make changes to your configuration and need to backup data before continuing, press **ESC** and do so now. Otherwise, press any key to continue.

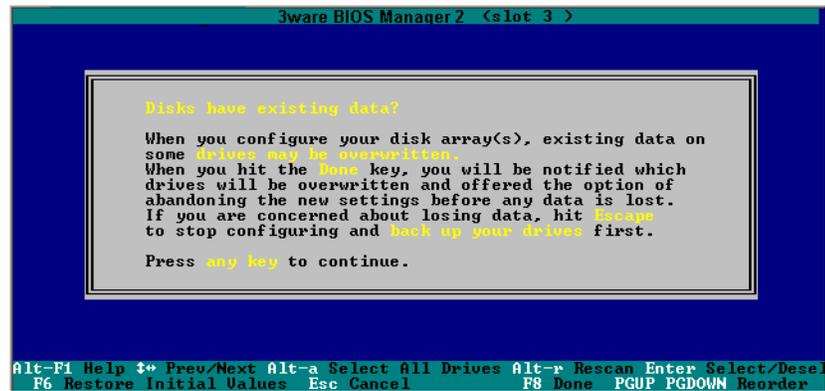


Figure 7. Warning Message When you Start 3BM

To select the drives and create a disk unit

- 1 Select the drives to be included by highlighting each one and pressing **Enter** to select it.

When you select a drive, an asterisk appears next to it in the left-most column (see Figure 8).

You may include from one to sixteen drives in the unit, depending on the number available.

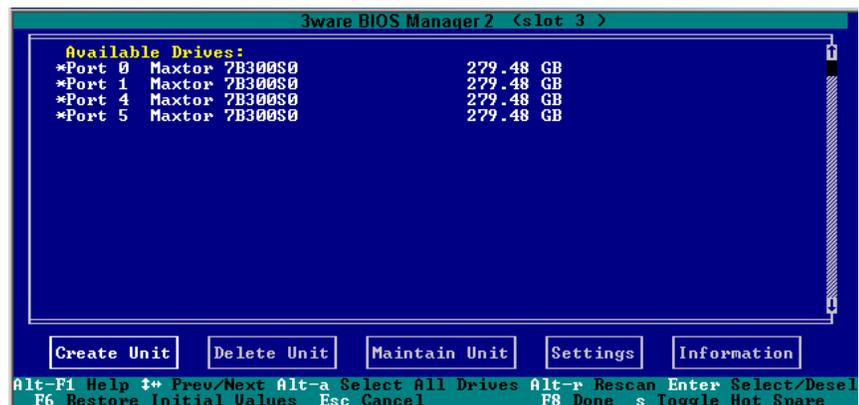


Figure 8. Asterisks Next to Selected Drives

- 2 After all drives for the unit are selected, use the **Tab** to move to the **Create Unit** button and press **Enter**.

The **Create Disk Array** screen appears (see Figure 9).

- 3 Make sure that the proper drives are listed.



Figure 9. Create Disk Array Display, RAID 0 Example

To name the unit and select the desired RAID configuration

- 1 (Optional) Press **Enter** in the **Array Name** field and type a name for the unit. Then press **Enter** again to accept the name.
- 2 Use the **arrow keys** or press **Tab** to move to the **RAID Configuration** field and press **Enter** to display the available RAID levels for the number of drives you selected.



Figure 10. List of Configuration Choices for Four Drives

- 3 Use the **arrow keys** to highlight the desired RAID configuration and press **Enter**.

For information about the different RAID levels and when to use each, see “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5.

- 4 Use the **arrow keys** or press **Tab** to move to the field **Stripe Size** and select the desired stripe size (16KB, 64KB, or 256KB).



Note: Striping size is not applicable for RAID 1, because it is a mirrored unit without striping.

In general, use smaller stripe sizes for sequential access (such as video access) and larger stripe sizes for random access (such as a database).

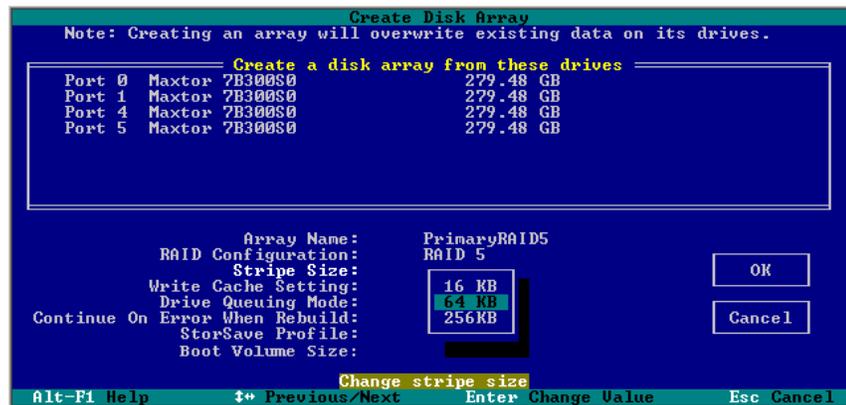


Figure 11. Stripe Sizes for a RAID 5

To set other policies for the unit

While creating a unit through 3BM, you can set several policies that effect the unit (Write Cache, Drive Queuing Mode, and Continue on Error When Rebuild), and you can select a StorSave profile.

Each of these policies is already set to a default value, so you do not have to change them. In addition, you can change each of these policies later without affecting the configuration.

- 1 Use the arrow keys or press **Tab** to move to the field you want to change.
- 2 Press **Enter** to see the available options.
- 3 Use the **arrow keys** to select the option you want and press **Enter** to choose it.

For details about these parameters, see:

- “Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache” on page 143
- “Enabling and Disabling Queuing for a Unit” on page 147
- “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149
- “Setting Continue on Source Error During Rebuild” on page 146

To create a boot unit of a particular size

You can specify a portion of the unit you create to be used as a boot volume, if desired. This is useful if you will be installing your operating system onto the unit and want to have a designated volume for the OS. The remainder of the unit will be created as a separate volume.



Note: Setting a Boot Volume Size is optional. In addition, if you specify a boot volume, you do not have to install your operating system onto it. For more information about creating a boot volume, see “Boot volume size” on page 130. If the size your array is 2TB or greater, you may also want to review the information about carving the unit into multiple volumes. For details, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

- 1 Use the arrow keys or press **Tab** to move to the **Boot Volume Size** field.
- 2 Press **Enter** to display a text box.
- 3 Enter the size in Gigabytes that should be assigned to the boot volume.
- 4 Press **Enter** again to accept the size.

To confirm unit configuration

- 1 Press **Tab** to select the **OK** button and press **Enter** to confirm creation of the unit.

Or, if you want to cancel the creation of the unit, tab to **Cancel** and press **Enter**.

- 2 If you leave the **Unit Write Cache** field enabled and do not have a BBU installed, 3BM will ask you to confirm that you want enable write cache.

The unit is not actually created and no data is overwritten until you have finished making all your changes and press **F8**.

- 3 If the volume summary screen appears, review the information and press any key to continue.

Multiple volumes will be created if you entered a Boot Volume Size of greater than zero (0), or if auto-carving is enabled and the combined size of the drives in your unit is large enough to divide it into multiple volumes. For more information about auto-carving, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

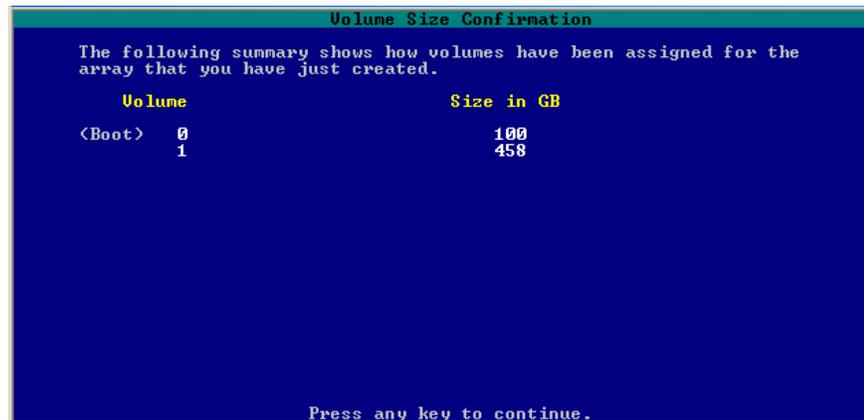


Figure 12. Summary of Volumes to be Created

To finish up and save your changes

- 1 If you have additional drives, you can go ahead and configure an additional RAID unit or designate a hot spare. Then continue on with these steps. (For details about hot spares, see page 27.)
- 2 If you configured more than one unit, and you plan to install the operating system on one of them, make that unit be the first unit (Unit 0) in the list of Exportable Units.

To move a unit up in the list, highlight it and press the **Page Up** key.

You will also want to make sure that the controller is the boot device for your computer. After finalizing the configuration below, be sure to follow the steps under “Checking the Motherboard Boot Sequence” on page 28.

- 3 When you are finished configuring units, press **F8** to save the changes and exit 3BM.

A warning message asks you to confirm that all existing data on the drives will be deleted.

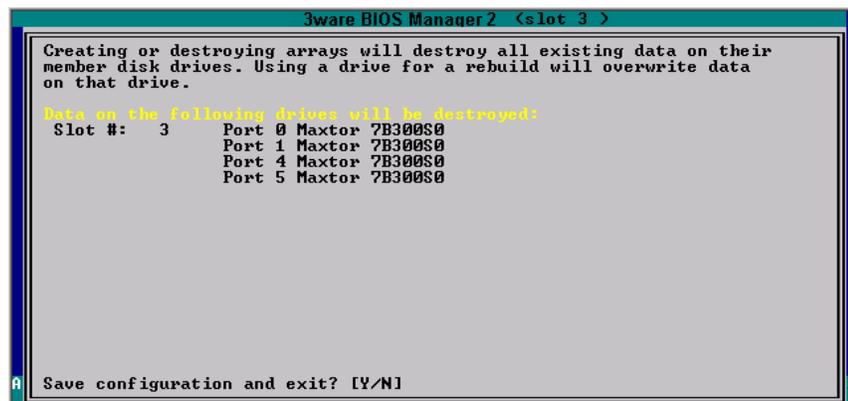


Figure 13. Confirmation Message when Saving and Exiting

- 4 Type **Y** to continue, delete any existing data on the drives, and create the unit.

Depending on the RAID configuration you are creating, initialization of the unit may begin immediately. The initialization process can take several hours, depending on the size of your drives.

- 5 If you want to use a RAID configuration which has started initializing, you can press **Esc** to cancel the progress box. (Before doing this, be sure to read “Trade-offs to cancelling initialization,” below.)

You can then exit 3BM and boot to the operating system before the process of writing zeroes to the drives is complete. Once you have booted to the operating system, background initialization of the RAID 5 or RAID 50 unit will begin after a delay of up to ten minutes.



Trade-offs to cancelling initialization:

- Performance of these units will be lower until initialization is complete.
- When initializing is done after booting to the operating system, the process of initializing takes longer than it does if initialization is done by writing zeroes to the unit in the BIOS. Consequently, it will be a longer period of time until the performance of the unit is fully optimal. Data remains intact when initialization is done in the operating system.

For complete information about initialization of RAID units, see “About Initialization” on page 177.

Specifying a Hot Spare

You can designate one of the **Available Drives** as a hot spare in 3BM. If a hot spare is specified and a redundant unit degrades, an event notification will be generated. The hot spare will automatically replace the failed drive without user intervention.

To specify a hot spare

- 1 In the list of **Available Drives**, highlight the drive to use.
- 2 Type **s** to specify that the selected drive will be the hot spare.

You'll see the words "Hot Spare" appear next to the drive in the Available Drives list.

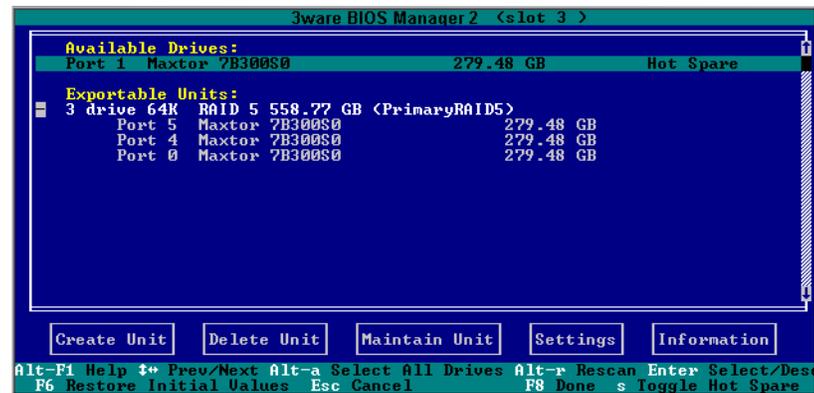


Figure 14. Hot Spare Indicated

If a hot spare is already enabled, you can disable it by following the same process.



Note: In order to replace a failed drive in a degraded unit, a hot spare drive must have the same or larger storage capacity than the failed drive.

Leaving Individual Drives as JBODs

By default, if you leave individual drives unconfigured (JBODs), they will not be available to the operating system. If you want to be able to use individual drives, configure them as single-disk units.

If you have JBODs attached to an 8000 controller that you want to use with the 9000 controller, see "Moving Units from an 8000 Controller to a 9000 Controller" on page 164.

Checking the Motherboard Boot Sequence

Using your computer's Setup utility, ensure that it shows the appropriate boot device.

After installing the 3ware 9000 controller in your system, go into the BIOS for your computer system to check and change the boot order. This is necessary because most systems automatically change the boot order when they detect a newly installed controller and device. Refer to the documentation for your system for information about starting the system BIOS.

- **If the OS is already installed on a unit connected to the system**, be sure that device precedes the 3ware RAID controller in the boot sequence. If you have other disks installed on the motherboard, the 3ware RAID controller should precede them in boot order.
- **If you will install your OS on a disk or unit attached to the 3ware RAID controller**, specify the controller as the boot device. (Note that if you configured more than one unit, the drive(s) specified as Unit 0 will be treated as the boot disk.)

What Next?

The final steps in setting up your RAID units are to load the 3ware driver and make the units available to your operating system. For details, turn to Chapter 4, "Driver Installation."

After installing the driver, you may also want to install 3ware's browser-based Disk Management tool, 3DM 2, or the 3ware Command Line Interface (CLI). With 3DM 2 and CLI, you can maintain your RAID units while running Windows. For more information, see Chapter 6, "3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)" and the *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Driver Installation

The final steps in setting up your RAID units are to load the 3ware driver and make the units available to your operating system.

- If the unit you have created will be your system's boot device, you install the driver for the controller as you install the operating system.
- If the operating system is already installed on a unit connected to another controller or to the motherboard, you start the operating system and then install the driver.

Details for both situations are described in this chapter. Driver information is organized by operating system:

- “Driver Installation Under Windows” on page 30
- “Driver Installation Under Linux” on page 38
- “Driver Installation Under FreeBSD” on page 49

Driver Installation Under Windows



Note: Before installing the 3ware driver, you must have already physically installed your 3ware RAID controller in the system. Consult the installation guide that came with your controller for how to do this. You can download that guide from: <http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>.

The 3ware RAID controller can be used with Microsoft Windows 2000 (SP3 or newer), Windows XP (SP1 or newer), and Windows Server 2003. Windows 2003 64-bit for AMD Opteron or Intel EM64T is also supported. It is recommended that you upgrade to the latest service pack available.

A drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller may be configured to be your system's boot device. Or, you can use units managed by the 3ware controller for secondary storage and boot from another device, such as a disk attached to the motherboard, or other bootable media.

This section contains instructions for how to:

- Create a driver diskette for the 3ware RAID controller
- Install the 3ware driver and Windows on a new drive or unit.
- Install the 3ware driver when Windows is already installed on a different device.



Note: You must have administrator privileges for your system to install the Windows operating system and the 3ware driver.

Materials Required

- 3ware software CD-ROM
- Microsoft Windows 2000, XP, or Server 2003 installation CD-ROM. (Not required if Windows is already installed on another drive.)
- Floppy diskette, to create a driver diskette.

If you are installing Windows, you must create a 3ware driver diskette. If Windows is already installed on another device, you may install the 3ware driver from either the 3ware software CD-ROM or from a diskette.

Creating a 3ware Driver Diskette

If you are installing Windows on a new unit or drive managed by the 3ware RAID controller, you must create a 3ware driver diskette.

To create a driver diskette

- 1 Insert the 3ware software CD into your system.
- 2 When the 3ware Menu appears, click **Driver and Firmware Disks**.
- 3 In the 3ware Driver & Firmware Images menu, click the appropriate button to create the driver diskette that you need.

Note that there are both 32-bit and 64-bit AMD drivers available for Windows. Be sure to select the correct one.

- 4 When the confirm message appears, insert a blank diskette into a floppy drive and click the **Yes** button to begin the process.

Installing the 3ware Driver and Windows on a New Unit

If you want to install Windows on a new drive configuration managed by the 3ware RAID controller, follow the instructions in this section.

If Windows is already installed on another drive, turn to “Installing the Driver on a System that Boots from a Different Device” on page 32.

To install Windows and the 3ware driver

- 1 Boot from the Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 CD and press **F6** when you see the message: “Press F6 if you need to install a 3rd party SCSI or RAID driver” at the bottom of the display.
- 2 When you see the message: “Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter...”
Type **S** to specify that you have an additional 3ware RAID controller.
- 3 Insert the 3ware driver diskette and press **Enter**.
- 4 When a box with **AMCC 3ware Series ATA RAID Controller** appears, press **Enter** to select it.
- 5 Type **S** if you have additional devices to add. Otherwise, press **Enter**.

- 6 If the “Digital Signature Not Found” message appears, click **Yes** to continue the installation.

(If there are multiple controllers in the system, you will see this message once for each controller.)
- 7 Continue with the normal Windows installation at this point. There are no instructions after installing the driver that are specific to 3ware. If you need additional instructions, refer to the Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 documentation supplied by Microsoft.
- 8 Turn to page 32 and follow the instructions for “Making Units Managed by a 3ware Controller Available to Windows”.

Installing the Driver on a System that Boots from a Different Device

If you are installing the 3ware RAID controller on a system that already has the operating system installed on another drive, follow the instructions in this section, depending on the version of Windows installed on your system:

- “To install the 3ware driver under Windows 2000” on page 32
- “To install the 3ware driver under Windows XP or 2003” on page 34

To install the 3ware driver under Windows 2000

When you start Windows after installing a 3ware RAID controller, Windows recognizes it as a Plug and Play device, and brings up the **Found New Hardware Wizard**. This wizard guides you through installing the 3ware driver (see Figure 15). Note that you will see screens for the installation of two drivers during this process.



Figure 15. Found New Hardware Wizard, Windows 2000

- 1 Click the **Next** button and respond to the questions the Wizard displays using the default selections.
- 2 When the Wizard prompts you to select a device driver, click **Have Disk**, and then indicate that it is on the CD or floppy.
- 3 If the “Digital Signature Not Found” message appears, click **Yes** to continue the installation.
- 4 When the Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard screen appears (Figure 16), click **Finish**.



Figure 16. Completing Found New Hardware Wizard

- 5 If the “Completing” screen similar to Figure 16 indicates that you should restart your computer, do so now.
- 6 When the Install Hardware Device Drivers screen appears (Figure 17), click **Next** and follow the prompts on the screen to install the second driver.

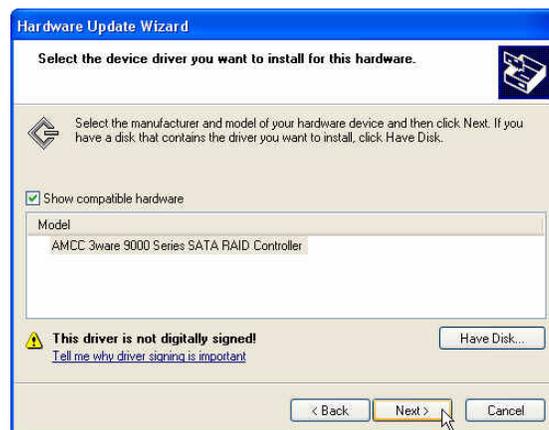


Figure 17. Install Hardware Device Drivers

- 7 When the second Completing the Found New Hardware screen appears, click **Finish**.



Figure 18. Completing Found New Hardware Wizard

After the driver has been installed, continue with the instructions under “Making Units Managed by a 3ware Controller Available to Windows” on page 37.

To install the 3ware driver under Windows XP or 2003

When you start Windows after installing a 3ware RAID controller, Windows recognizes it as a Plug and Play device, and brings up the **Found New Hardware Wizard**. This wizard guides you in installing the 3ware driver (see Figure 19). Note that you will see screens for the installation of two drivers during this process.



Figure 19. Found New Hardware Wizard, Windows XP and 2003

- 1 Click the **Next** button and respond to the questions the Wizard displays.
- 2 When the Wizard prompts you to select a device driver, click Have Disk, and then indicate that it is on the CD or floppy.

- 3 If the “Digital Signature Not Found” message appears, click **Yes** to continue the installation.
- 4 When the Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard screen appears (Figure 20), click **Finish**.



Figure 20. Completing Found New Hardware Wizard

- 5 If the “Completing” screen similar to Figure 20 indicates that you should restart your computer, do so now.
- 6 When the Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard screen appears again (Figure 21), click **Next** and follow the prompts on the screen to install the second driver.



Figure 21. Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard

- 7 When the second Completing the Found New Hardware screen appears, click **Finish**.



Figure 22. Completing Found New Hardware Wizard

After the driver has been installed, continue with the instructions below under “Making Units Managed by a 3ware Controller Available to Windows” on page 37.

Making Units Managed by a 3ware Controller Available to Windows

After the 3ware driver has been installed, you need to partition and format the new units or disks.

- 1 Remove the driver diskette or CD, reboot the system, and log in as the system administrator.
- 2 Use **Disk Administrator** to partition and format the new units or disks:

From the **Start** menu, choose **Administrative Tools > Computer Management**.

In the Computer Management window, under **Storage**, select **Disk Management**.



Figure 23. Computer Management Screen

- 3 Follow the steps that appear on the screen to write a signature to the drive.
- 4 Right-click on the drive and select **Create Volume**.
- 5 Follow the steps the appear on-screen to create a volume and to assign a drive letter.

Driver Installation Under Linux



Note: Before installing the 3ware driver, you must have already installed your 3ware RAID controller in the system. Consult the installation guide that came with your controller for how to do this. You can download that guide from: <http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>

A drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller may be configured to be your system's boot device. Or, you can use units managed by the 3ware controller for secondary storage and boot from another device, such as a disk attached to the motherboard, or other bootable media.

These steps assume that you do not have a 9500S installed in the system already. If you already have a system with a 9500S and you wish to add a 9550SX or 9590SE to that same system, you will need to upgrade the 9500S driver, 3DM 2, and/or CLI with the versions for the 9550SX or 9590SE.

The steps you follow to install the driver and make your RAID unit available depend on which version of Linux you are using, and whether it will be your boot device. This chapter provides step-by-step instructions for the following:

- Red Hat / Fedora Core Linux Installation
 - “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module while Installing Red Hat Linux on a New Unit” on page 41
 - “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a Red Hat Linux System that Boots From a Different Device” on page 42
- SuSE Linux Installation
 - “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module while Installing SuSE Linux with YaST2 on a New Unit” on page 46
 - “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a SuSE Linux System that Boots from a Different Device” on page 47

The 9.3 code set from the 3ware website provides compiled drivers for these versions of Linux:

- Fedora Core 4 for AMD and Intel Platforms (32-bit & 64-bit)
- RedHat Workstation 4 (no update) for AMD and Intel Platforms (32-bit & 64-bit)
- SuSE 9.3 Pro for AMD and Intel Platforms (32-bit & 64-bit)
- SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 9.0 for AMD and Intel Platforms (32-bit & 64-bit)

If you are using an unsupported Linux distribution or kernel for which there is not a driver available from the 3ware download page, see the following article in the 3ware knowledgebase: <http://www.3ware.com/kb/>

[article.aspx?id=14546](#). You can also contact 3ware Technical Support, or email your driver request to support1@amcc.com.

For information about how to compile a driver from the 3ware driver source, see the links appended to knowledgebase article 14546 (<http://www.3ware.com/kb/article.aspx?id=14546>).

Obtaining 3ware Linux Drivers

Obtain the 3ware driver for Linux from one of these two sources:

- **3ware software CD-ROM.** Compiled and tested drivers for Red Hat and SuSE Linux are included on this CD.
- **3ware web site.** You can download the latest compiled and tested driver for supported Linux distributions from the 3ware web site at <http://www.3ware.com/support/index.asp>. Included in these downloads is the Linux driver source, which you can use to compile the latest driver for RedHat, SuSE, and other similar distributions, running similar kernel strings.

Be Sure to Use the Correct Drivers

The Linux 3w-9xxx drivers included on the 3ware CD are for 3ware 9590SE, 9550SX, and 9500S series controllers. 3ware 7/8000 series controllers use a Linux driver labeled 3w-xxxx. The drivers for the 9000 series controllers and the 7/8000 series controllers are not interchangeable, but can be used together when both controller types are installed in the same system. The examples in this chapter refer only to the 9000 series driver (9590SE, 9550SX, and 9500S). For information about using the 7/8000 driver and controller, refer to the user guide or installation procedure for the 7/8000-series controller.



Warning: Be sure to use the correct driver for your processor. Be sure you load the correct driver on your system. It is possible to load the wrong driver onto a system, however when you boot such systems, they will not work.

For Red Hat, AMCC offers the following drivers:

- x86 32-bit for Intel x86 and AMD Athlon
- AMD 64-bit, used for both AMD Opteron and Intel 64-bit Xeon (EM64T)

For SuSE, AMCC offers the following drivers:

- x86 32-bit, for Intel x86 and AMD Athlon
 - AMD 64-bit, for AMD Opteron and Intel 64-bit Xeon (EM64T)
-

Determining the Current Version of your 3ware Driver

If you already have a 3ware controller installed, you can check the current driver version, using either 3DM 2 or the CLI. (For details, see “Viewing Information About Individual Controllers” on page 115.)

You can also check it using the following method:

If you have a 2.4 kernel or earlier, type the following command:

```
cat /proc/scsi/3w-9xxx/*
```

where the asterisk (*) represents SCSI host ID and 9xxx represents the family of the controller. For example:

```
cat /proc/scsi/3w-9xxx/0
```

If you have a 2.6 kernel with sysfs, type the following command:

```
cat /sys/class/scsi_host/<hostid>/stats
```

where <hostid> is usually host0, unless other SCSI devices are available, in which case it may be host1 or higher.

If you have a 2.6 kernel without sysfs, type the following command:

```
dmesg | grep 3w
```

(dmesg can also be used with earlier kernel versions.)

Driver Installation Under Red Hat Linux or Fedora Core 4

Materials required

- 3ware software CD-ROM
- Floppy diskette, if you need to create a driver install diskette.
- Red Hat Linux installation CD-ROM. (Not required if Red Hat Linux is already installed on another drive.)

Creating a Red Hat Linux Driver Diskette

If you are installing Linux on the new drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller, you must create a 3ware driver install diskette. If Linux is already installed on another device, you may install the 3ware kernel driver module from the 3ware software CD-ROM.

To create a Red Hat Linux driver install diskette

- 1 Insert the 3ware software CD into your system.
- 2 When the 3ware Escalade Menu appears, click the **Driver & Firmware Disks** button.
- 3 In the 3ware Driver & Firmware Disk Images menu, click the button for the driver disk you want to create.
A confirmation window opens.
- 4 Insert a blank diskette into a drive and click the **Yes** button to begin creating the driver floppy diskette.



Note: If you need to create a Linux driver diskette for a Linux distribution other than what is available on the menu, see 3ware knowledgebase article 11843 <http://www.3ware.com/kb/article.aspx?id=11843>

To get the kernel driver module

If you only need the kernel driver module, you can get it in one of two ways:

- Browse the 3ware CD to `/packages/drivers/linux` and copy the appropriate kernel driver modules for your distribution release.

Or

- Follow the steps above to create a driver install diskette from the menu.

Extract the kernel driver module from the `modules.cgz` file, using this command:

```
zcat modules.cgz | cpio -idvm
```

Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module while Installing Red Hat Linux on a New Unit



Note: If Red Hat Linux is already installed and bootable on another drive, turn to “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a Red Hat Linux System that Boots From a Different Device” on page 42.



Note: We have tested some older systems where an IDE drive connected to the motherboard interfered with using a drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller as a boot device. Disconnecting the IDE drive while installing Linux will eliminate this problem. After Linux is installed, the drive can be reconnected.

To install the 3ware kernel driver module while installing Red Hat Linux on a new unit

- 1 Boot with the Red Hat CD:
 - a Insert the Red Hat CD-ROM disk into your computer.
 - b Make sure the boot order in your motherboard's BIOS is correct; then start or reboot your computer.
 - c When the Welcome to Red Hat display appears, you can either type:

```
linux dd
expert
```

Or you can type:

```
expert text
```

A number of files will load and then a message will prompt you to insert your driver install disk.
- 4 Install the 3ware kernel driver module, using the driver install diskette:

Insert the driver install diskette containing the 3ware driver for Red Hat and press **Enter**.

The system automatically reports: `Loading 3w-9xxx`
- 5 When prompted, select the proper language and keyboard types for your locality.
- 6 If asked for what type of media, select Local CD-ROM since you are installing from the Red Hat CD-ROM.

Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a Red Hat Linux System that Boots From a Different Device

The steps for installing the 3ware kernel driver module vary slightly, depending on your specific installation requirements. Select the appropriate set of steps below, based on whether:

- You want to update the RAM disk
- You prefer to load the driver manually or from a script, instead of updating the RAM

About Variables In the Kernel Driver Module Installation Instructions

These conventions are used for variable text for kernel strings and module names in the instructions on the following pages.

Kernel String Conventions

<kernel string> refers to the kernel version.

The kernel string will have different endings, depending on the kernel you are using.

- For an SMP kernel (multi-processor), the kernel string will end in `smp`. For example: `2.6.11-smp`.
- For an Enterprise kernel, the kernel string will end in `enterprise`. For example: `2.6.11-enterprise`
- For a Bigmem kernel, the kernel string will end in `bigmem`. For example: `2.6.11-bigmem`
- For a Hugemem kernel, the kernel string will end in `hugemem`. For example: `2.6.11-hugemem`

Module Naming Conventions

`3w-9xxx.*` refers to the specific kernel driver module you will copy in the examples shown in steps 3 and 4. The name of the kernel driver module you will copy (`3w-9xxx.*`) varies, depending on the kernel; however you will always copy it to a file named

`3w-9xxx.o` for 2.4 kernels, or `3w-9xxx.ko` for 2.6 kernels.

The available kernel driver module files are:

- For UP kernels: `3w-9xxx.ko`
- For SMP kernels: `3w-9xxx.smp`
- For Enterprise kernels: `3w-9xxx.ent`
- For Bigmem kernels: `3w-9xxx.big`
- For Hugemem kernels: `3w-9xxx.hug`
- For IA32E kernels: `3w-9xxx.i32`

To install the 3ware driver and update the RAM disk

- 1 Log in as root and open a console window.
- 2 Mount the CD which contains the 3ware kernel driver module.

To mount the CD, type:

```
mount /dev/cdrom and press Enter.
```

- 3 Copy the kernel driver module:

For Redhat WS4 on Intel x86 and AMD, type:

```
cp /mnt/cdrom/packages/drivers/linux/redhat/ws4/x86/  
3w-9xxx.<ko, smp, or hug> /lib/modules/<put kernel string here>/  
kernel/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

If prompted to overwrite, type *y*.

For Redhat workstation on AMD Opteron and Intel EM64T, type:

```
cp /mnt/cdrom/packages/drivers/linux/redhat/ws4/x86_64/  
3w-9xxx.<ko or smp> /lib/modules/<put kernel string here>/  
kernel/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

If prompted to overwrite, type *y*.

- 4 **For 2.6 Kernels**, add the following line to `/etc/modprobe.conf`
`alias scsi_hostadapter 3w-9xxx.ko`

- 5 Update the `modules.dep` file, by issuing the following command:
`/sbin/depmod -a`

- 6 Run `mkinitrd` by entering the following:
`/sbin/mkinitrd -v -f /boot/initrd-<kernel string>.img
<kernel string1>`

where `<kernel string1>` is the `/lib/modules` directory from which to copy the 3w-9xxx driver. Example:

```
/sbin/mkinitrd -v -f /boot/initrd-2.6.18-14.img 2.6.18-14
```

- 7 If you are using the GRUB boot loader, skip to Step 8.

If you are using the LILO boot loader, run LILO to update the boot record on disk by typing the following:

```
/sbin/lilo
```

The output should be similar to:

```
Added linux *
```

- 8 Reboot.

The 3ware kernel driver module will be loaded from the ram disk automatically at boot time.

To install the 3ware kernel driver module and load the module manually instead of using a RAM disk

- 1 Log in as root and open a console window.
- 2 Mount the CD which contains the 3ware kernel driver module.

To mount the CD, type:

```
mount /dev/cdrom and press Enter.
```

- 3 Copy the kernel driver module.

For Redhat workstation on Intel x86 and AMD x86, type:

```
cp /mnt/cdrom/packages/drivers/linux/redhat/ws4/x86/3w-9xxx.
<ko, smp, or hug> /lib/modules/<put kernel string here>/kernel/
drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

If prompted to overwrite, type *y*.

For Redhat workstation on AMD Opteron and EM64T, type:

```
cp /mnt/cdrom/packages/drivers/linux/redhat/ ws4/x86_64/
3w-9xxx. <ko or smp> /lib/modules/<put kernel string here>/
kernel/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

If prompted to overwrite, type *y*.

- 4 Add the following line to `/etc/modules.conf`:

```
alias scsi_hostadapter 3w-9xxx
```

- 5 Update the `modules.dep` file, by issuing the following command:

```
/sbin/depmod -a
```

- 6 Load the kernel driver module manually. Type:

```
modprobe sd_mod
insmod 3w-9xxx
```

You can also incorporate the `insmod` command into a startup script.

Driver Installation Under SuSE Linux

Materials required

- 3ware software CD-ROM
- Floppy diskette, if you need to make a driver install diskette.
- SuSE Linux Installation CD-ROM/DVD (Not required if SuSE Linux is already installed on another drive.)

Creating a SuSE Linux Driver Diskette

If you are installing Linux on the new drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller, you must create a 3ware driver install diskette. If Linux is already installed on another device, you may install the 3ware kernel driver module from the 3ware software CD-ROM.

To create a driver install diskette

- 1 Insert the 3ware software CD into your system.
- 2 When the 3ware Escalade Menu appears, click **Driver and Firmware Disks**.
- 3 In the 3ware Driver and Firmware Disk Images menu, click the button for the driver disk you want to create.
A confirmation window opens.
- 4 Insert a blank diskette into a drive and click the **Yes** button to begin copying the driver to the floppy diskette.



Note: If you need to create a Linux driver diskette for a Linux distribution other than what is available on the menu, see 3ware knowledgebase article 14546
<http://www.3ware.com/KB/article.aspx?id=14546>

To get the kernel driver module

If you only need the kernel driver module, you can get it in one of two ways:

- Browse the 3ware CD to `/packages/drivers/linux` and copy the appropriate kernel driver modules for your distribution release.

Or

- Follow the steps above to create a driver install diskette from the menu.

Extract the kernel driver module from the `update.tar.gz` file, using this command:

```
tar -xzf update.tar.gz
```

Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module while Installing SuSE Linux with YaST2 on a New Unit



Note: If SuSE Linux is already installed on another drive, turn to “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a SuSE Linux System that Boots from a Different Device” on page 47.

- 1 Boot directly from the SuSE installation CD #1 or DVD.
- 2 When installing SuSE, press the F6 key.
You will then be prompted to insert the driver install disk.
- 3 Insert the 3ware Linux driver installation diskette.
- 4 Click OK and continue with the installation.

Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a SuSE Linux System that Boots from a Different Device

- 1 Log in as root.
- 2 Edit `/etc/sysconfig/kernel` and make sure the file contains the following line:

```
INITRD_MODULES="reiserfs 3w-9xxx"
```



Note: Other modules may be listed before or after `3w-9xxx`, depending on the installation. You may see entries like `reiserfs`, `ext3` or `scsi_mod`. If present, leave them (ensuring there is a space between each module name), since the system needs them to boot properly.



Note about variables: In the instruction below, replace `<kernel string>` with the kernel version you are using (i.e. 2.6, etc.) and replace `***` with your version of SuSE.

In addition, replace `3w-9xxx.*` with the appropriate module file for your kernel. The available module files are:

For UP kernels: `3w-9xxx.ko`

For SMP kernels: `3w-9xxx.smp`

For BigSMP (high memory) kernels: `3w-9xxx.big`

- 3 If you are using SuSE 9.1 or earlier, after the existing `3w-xxx` entry, add `3w-9xxx` to the file `/lib/modules/<kernel string>/modules.dep`
- 4 Mount the CD-ROM and copy and install the appropriate kernel driver module for your system.

Note: The AMD 64-bit driver is also used for 64-bit Intel Xeon systems.

```
mount /dev/cdrom /cdrom
cp /cdrom/packages/drivers/linux/suse/su93/3w-9xxx.*
/lib/modules/<kernel string>/kernel/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

If prompted to overwrite, type `y`.

- 5 To load the kernel driver module, type:


```
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/<kernel string>/kernel/drivers/scsi/
3w-9xxx.ko
```



Note: If the kernel driver module installation fails, confirm that the correct driver was installed from the CD-ROM. If a driver is not available for your system, you will need to compile your own driver. For more information, see 3ware knowledgebase article 14546 <http://www.3ware.com/kb/article.aspx?id=14546>.

6 Type:

```
/sbin/depmod -a
```

7 Type:

```
/sbin/mkinitrd
```

8 If you are using the GRUB boot loader, you are finished.

If you are using the LILO boot loader, run LILO to update the boot record on disk by typing the following:

```
/sbin/lilo
```

The output should be similar to:

```
Added linux *
```

Compiling a 3ware Driver for Linux

If you are using a Linux distribution for which there is not a compiled driver available from 3ware, you can copy the source from the 3ware software CD or download the source from the 3ware website and compile a new driver. For more information, see 3ware knowledgebase article 14546 <http://www.3ware.com/KB/article.aspx?id=14546>.

Driver Installation Under FreeBSD



Note: Before installing the 3ware driver, you must have already installed your 3ware RAID controller in the system. Consult the installation guide that came with your controller for how to do this. You can download the installation guide from: <http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>

A drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller may be configured to be your system's boot device. Or, you can use another device as your boot device, such as a disk attached to the motherboard.

Obtaining 3ware FreeBSD Drivers

The 3ware software CD-ROM that came with the 3ware RAID controller includes compiled and tested kernel driver modules for FreeBSD 5.4 only. To see if a more recent driver is available, please see the 3ware web site at <http://www.3ware.com/support/index.asp>.

Materials Required

- 3ware kernel driver module

The kernel driver module and the corresponding source files can be found on the 3ware CD-ROM, at

```
/packages/drivers/freebsd/5.4/x86
```

or

```
/packages/drivers/freebsd/5.4/x86_64
```

depending on whether you have the 32-bit or 64-bit version of FreeBSD 5.4 (respectively).

The source for the 3ware FreeBSD kernel driver module is available at

```
/packages/drivers/freebsd/src/5.x.
```

You can also download the FreeBSD kernel driver module from the 3ware web site (<http://www.3ware.com/support/index.asp>).

- FreeBSD installation CD-ROM or diskette

Installing the Driver under FreeBSD

The steps you follow to install the driver and make your 3ware 9550SX/9590SE RAID unit available depend on whether it will be your boot device or will be used for secondary storage. These instructions provide step-by-step instructions for the following situations:

- “Installing the Kernel Driver Module while Installing FreeBSD v5.4 on a Unit on the 3ware RAID Controller” on page 50
- “Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a FreeBSD System that Boots from a Device on the Motherboard” on page 53

If you are using a 3ware 9500S RAID controller, see “Upgrading the Driver for 9500S Controllers” on page 54.

Installing the Kernel Driver Module while Installing FreeBSD v5.4 on a Unit on the 3ware RAID Controller

Use the steps in this section if you are installing FreeBSD on the new drive or unit managed by the 3ware RAID controller (9550SX or 9590SE).



Note: The 3ware kernel driver module integrated into the FreeBSD installation CD supports 9500S controllers, but not 9550SX/9590SE controllers. Since this driver is statically compiled with the kernel, newer drivers with the same name (`tw.ko`) cannot exist. A temporary driver is provided, named `tw_9ksk.ko`, which can be used to accomplish the FreeBSD installation and enable boot device support. Once up and booted, you will need to upgrade the kernel driver module by compiling the new kernel driver sources provided on the CD or website. The steps below describe how to load the temporary kernel driver module, and then how to upgrade the kernel to include it.



Note: Some versions of FreeBSD cannot boot to arrays larger than 1 TByte. If you want to create an array larger than 1 TByte, check to make sure that the version of FreeBSD you have supports it.

To install the kernel driver module while installing FreeBSD v5.4

- 1 Disconnect all drives in the system, except the CD or DVD and the ones connected to the 9550SX or 9590SE controller.
- 2 Create the RAID units on the 9550SX 9590SE using 3BM (the 3ware BIOS Manager). For details, see “First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM” on page 19.

- 3 Copy the temporary kernel driver module (`twa_9ksx.ko`) onto a floppy.
`twa_9ksx.ko` is available on the 3ware CD-ROM, at
`packages/drivers/freebsd/5.4/9550sxInstall/x86` or `x86_64`
`twa_9ksx.ko` is also available at the following link
<http://www.3ware.com/KB/article.aspx?id=14850>. Both 32-bit (x86) and 64-bit (x86_64) Versions are attached.
 - 4 Boot the system from the FreeBSD installation CD. Immediately after the system starts booting the kernel, insert the floppy containing the appropriate 3ware 9550SX kernel driver module into the floppy drive.
 - 5 Run `sysinstall`.
In the `sysinstall` menu, choose **Configure > Load KLD**.
Load `twa_9ksx.ko` from the floppy drive.
 - 6 Install the FreeBSD OS, remove the floppy and the CD, and reboot.
 - 7 Immediately after the system starts booting the kernel, re-insert the floppy into the floppy drive.
 - 8 At the FreeBSD boot menu, select "Escape to loader prompt."
 - 9 At the loader prompt, load the kernel driver module by typing
`load disk0:twa_9ksx.ko` (assuming `disk0` is the floppy drive)
Then boot, by typing
`boot`
- Now that you have installed the `twa_9ksx.ko` kernel driver module and you are up and booted into FreeBSD, the next step is to upgrade the kernel with the latest 3ware kernel driver sources.
- 10 Once the system boots up, replace the `twa` driver sources at
`/sys/dev/twa` and `/sys/modules/twa` with the new sources that have 9550SX/9590SE support, for the OS version being used.
The sources for the new kernel driver module for FreeBSD 5.4 can be found on both the 3ware CD-ROM and the 3ware website.
For step-by-step instructions, see "To update the kernel with new driver source" on page 52.
 - 11 Build the kernel with the new driver sources.
For help with this, see http://www.freebsd.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/kernelconfig-building.html.
 - 12 Reboot your system.

To update the kernel with new driver source

- 1 Copy `.c` and `.h` files to `sys/dev/twa` and `makefile` to `sys/modules/twa`
- 2 Go to `/usr/src/sys/conf/` and edit the `files` file (use `vi` or any other editor)
 - a Remove these lines:

```
twa/twa.c
twa/twa_cam.c
twa/twa_freebsd.c
twa/twa_fwimg.c
twa/twa_globals.c
```
 - b Replace them with:

```
twa/tw_cl_fwimg.c (omit this if using code set 9.3.0.4 or newer)
twa/tw_cl_init.c
twa/tw_cl_initr.c
twa/tw_cl_io.c
twa/tw_cl_misc.c
twa/tw_osl_cam.c
twa/tw_osl_freebsd.c
```
 - c Save changes.
- 3 Go to `/usr/src/sys/conf/` and edit `kern.pre.mk` (use `vi` or any other editor).

Below this line: `INCLUDES+= -ISS/contrib/ngatm`

Add this line: `INCLUDES+= -ISS/dev/twa`

Save changes.
- 4 Go to `usr/src/sys/i386/conf` OR `/usr/src/sys/amd64/conf`, depending on whether you have a 32-bit or 64-bit version of FreeBSD 5.4 (respectively).
 - a Edit the `GENERIC` file (use `vi` or any other editor).
 - b Make sure `Device twa # 3ware 9000 series` is not commented out.
 - c Save changes.
 - d Do `config` (`GENERIC`, `SMP`, `PAE`), using the flags required for your hardware, followed by

```
cd ../compile/SMP
make clean
make cleandepend
make depend
make
make install
```
- 5 Reboot your system.

When the system reboots, the new kernel driver module will load automatically.



Note: If you have more than 4 GBytes of system memory, you will need to use the PAE kernel. The FreeBSD PAE kernel has a bug that requires the 3ware driver to be statically compiled. Do not dynamically load the kernel driver module (e.g. `kldload twa.ko`); doing so will cause the kernel to panic.

Installing the 3ware Kernel Driver Module on a FreeBSD System that Boots from a Device on the Motherboard

Use the steps in this section if FreeBSD is installed on a boot drive attached to the motherboard ATA controller, and you will be using the unit on your 3ware RAID controller for secondary storage.

When you use the controller for secondary storage, you do not need to install the kernel driver module, however you may want to update the kernel with it.

To install the 3ware kernel driver module when FreeBSD is installed on a device on the motherboard

- 1 Make sure the 3ware 9550SX or 9590SE controller is not installed in the system yet.
- 2 Install FreeBSD to a disk attached to the motherboard ATA controller.
Be sure to install the full FreeBSD source.
- 3 Once FreeBSD is installed, power down the system and install the 3ware 9550SX or 9590SE RAID controller. For assistance, see the installation guide that came with the controller.

Create the RAID units on the 9550SX using either 3BM (the BIOS of the 9550SX) or 3DM2/CLI (once FreeBSD is loaded).

- 4 Boot to FreeBSD.
- 5 Once the system boots up, replace the `twa` driver sources at `/sys/dev/twa` and `/sys/modules/twa` with the new sources that have 9550SX/9590SE support, for the OS version being used.

The sources for the new kernel driver module for FreeBSD 5.4 can be found on both the 3ware CD-ROM and the 3ware website.

For step-by-step instructions, see “To update the kernel with new driver source” on page 52.

- 6 Build the kernel with the new driver sources.
For help with this, see http://www.freebsd.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/kernelconfig-building.html.
- 7 Reboot your system.

Compiling and Loading the driver as a Module

If you want to compile the driver and load it as a module without rebuilding the kernel, follow these steps.

- 1 Disconnect all drives in the system, except the CD or DVD and the ones connected to the 9550SX controller.
- 2 Create the RAID units on the 9550SX using 3BM (BIOS)
- 3 Unpack `twa.tgz` and copy (`*.c` and `*.h`) files to `sys/dev/twa` and Makefile to `sys/modules/twa`
- 4

```
cd /sys/modules/twa
make
```
- 5 Comment out the entry `Device twa # 3ware 9000 series` in `usr/src/sys/i386/conf` or `usr/src/sys/amd64/conf`
- 6 Rebuild the kernel and reboot your system.
- 7 Load the kernel driver module from `/sys/modules/twa`

```
kldload twa.ko
```

Upgrading the Driver for 9500S Controllers

The FreeBSD 5.4 kernel has native support for 3ware 9500S RAID controllers; the driver is built in.

If you want to upgrade to the latest driver, you can do so and rebuild the kernel. Follow the instructions under “To update the kernel with new driver source” on page 52.

3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2)

This section describes the basics of using 3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2), one of the tools you can use to configure and maintain the units connected to your 3ware 9550SX or 9590SE RAID controller.

For information about doing particular tasks in 3BM, refer to the later sections in this guide.

This section is organized into the following topics:

- “Starting 3BM 2” on page 55
- “Exiting the 3BM Configuration Utility” on page 57
- “Working in the 3BM Screens” on page 58
- “Displaying Controller Information” on page 63
- “Getting Help While Using 3BM” on page 63

Starting 3BM 2

You access 3BM during the start-up process for your computer.

- 1 Power up or reboot your system.
- 2 While the system is starting, watch for a screen similar to Figure 24.

```
---Press <Alt-3> to access 3ware BIOS Manager ---
3ware ATA RAID Controller: 9590SE-12
BIOS: BE9X X.XX.XX.XXX   Firmware: FE9X X.XX.XX.XXX
BBU Status: Not Present
Number of online units: 1, available drives: 0, hot spare: 0, offline units:0

Exportable Units:
 3drive 64K RAID5      558.77GB (PrimaryRAID5)
  Port0   Maxtor          7B300S0      279.48 GB
  Port1   Maxtor          7B300S0      279.48 GB
  Port2   Maxtor          7B300S0      279.48 GB
```

Figure 24. 3ware BIOS Screen

- 3 Press **Alt-3** immediately to bring up the **3ware BIOS Manager (3BM)**.

Normally your 3ware configuration remains on-screen for just a few seconds. However, if a unit has degraded, the screen indicates the problem and remains on your screen longer.

- If you have more than one 9000-series controller in your system, a screen lists the available boards. (See Figure 25.) In this case, highlight the board with which you want to work and press **Enter**.

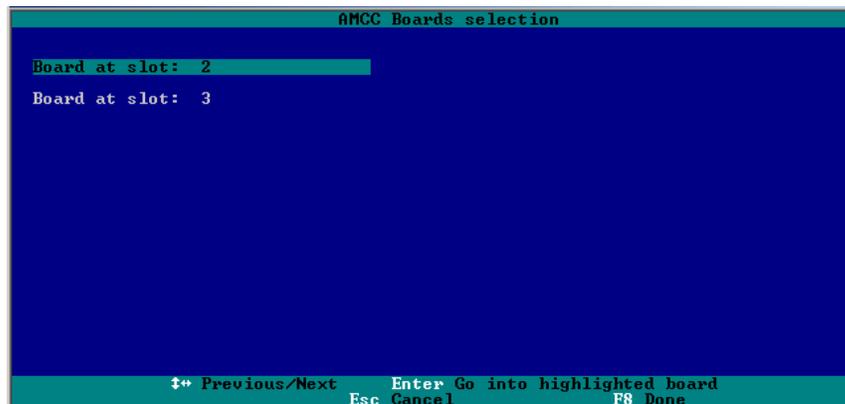


Figure 25. AMCC Boards Selection Screen

You see a screen similar to Figure 26, warning you that changing your disk array configuration may overwrite data on the disks.

- If you plan to make changes to your configuration and need to backup data before continuing, press **ESC** and do so now. Otherwise, press any key to continue.

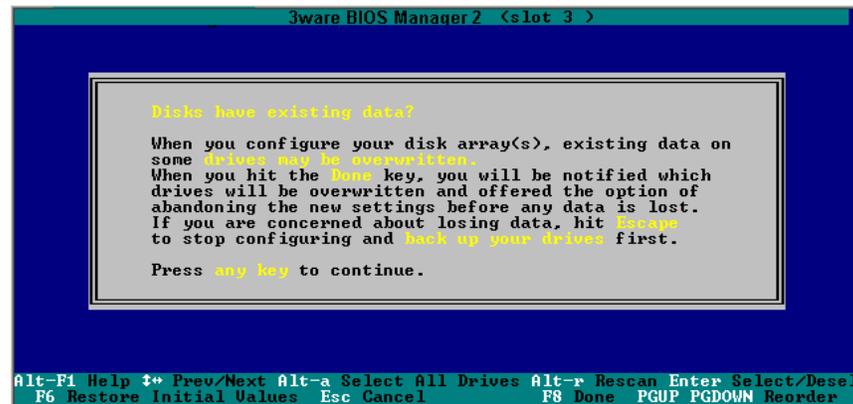


Figure 26. Warning Message When you Start 3BM

If 3BM detects a degraded array, a red message box appears, to alert you to the problem. For information about rebuilding a degraded array, see “Rebuilding Units” on page 189.



Note: If you have a combination of 7000/8000-series and 9000-series controllers in your system, the 7000/8000-series controllers are not listed on the selection screen shown in Figure 25. Instead, an additional BIOS summary will appear for the 7000/8000-series controller, similar to Figure 24. To access the BIOS utility for the 7000/8000-series board, press **Alt-3** when the information for that controller appears. Although similar to 3BM, some screens and features are different for the 7000/8000-series. For detailed information, see the version of the *3ware Escalade ATA RAID Controller User Guide* that supports the 7000 and 8000 series controllers.

If you have two 9000 controllers that have different versions of the BIOS installed, they will also appear in different BIOS summaries, and will launch different versions of 3BM.

Exiting the 3BM Configuration Utility

When you are ready to exit the 3BM configuration utility, you have the option to save the configuration changes you have made, or to discard the changes.

To save your configuration modifications

- 1 Press the **F8** or **Esc** key.
A list of affected drives appears, and a messages ask you to confirm the configuration.
- 2 Type **y**.
The booting process resumes.

To exit without saving changes

- 1 Press **Esc**.
- 2 If you have unsaved changes, 3BM will ask you whether you want to save the changes and exit, or exit without saving the changes.
If you want to exit without saving changes, type **n**.
If you change your mind and want to save the changes, type **y**.

Exception: Changes made to controller policies are saved when you leave the Policy screen. Pressing **F8** is not required to save those changes. For more about changing policies, see “Viewing and Setting Controller Policies” on page 117.

Working in the 3BM Screens

The main 3BM screen (Figure 27) shows the current configuration for the drives attached to your controller, and a list of any available drives. Unusable and incomplete drives are also shown.

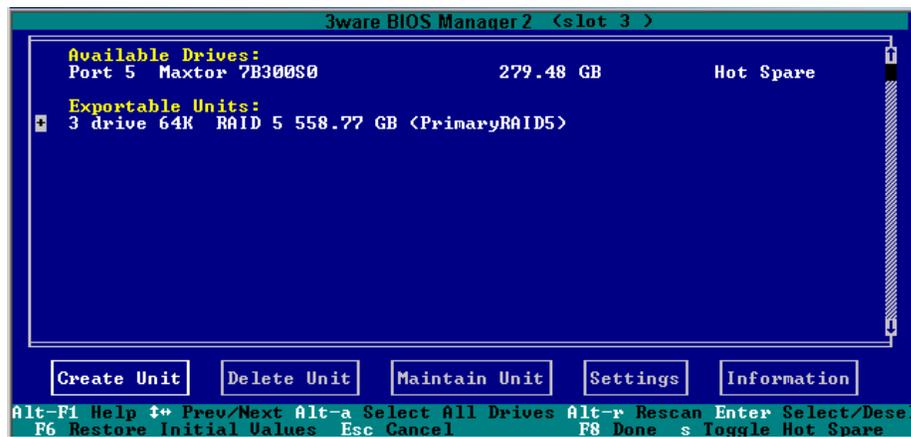


Figure 27. 3BM Main Display

You will see one or more of the following sections in the main 3BM screen:

- **Available Drives** lists any unconfigured, independent drives (JBODs) that are not associated with an array, and hot spares. If this section does not appear, there are no available drives.
- **Exportable Units** lists the existing units, along with the drives contained in each. These are the units that will be available to the operating system when you boot your computer. If this section does not appear, no units have been configured.

If you have more than one unit, the boot unit is the one at the top of the list. (You can change the order by highlighting a unit and pressing the **PgUp** or **PgDn** key.)

- **Unusable Arrays** lists any RAID configuration missing too many drives to construct the unit. For example, a RAID 5 unit with two or more drives missing would appear in this list.
- **Incomplete Drives and Others** lists drives that are remaining from a unit with missing or failed drives, drives that are not usable, and drives that were part of a unit on a 3ware 7000/8000-series controller, and contain

data that needs to be updated before your 3ware 9000 series controller can use them. (If you want to move a unit from a 7/8000 controller to the 9000 controller, you must convert the drives first. For more information, see the section “Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another” on page 163.)

When some of the drives are remaining from a unit, you can power down and add the missing drives to complete the unit. To use drives that are listed here in other units, you must first delete them. For more information, see “Deleting a Unit” on page 157.

If any of the sections are not shown, it means that there are no items of that type connected to the controller.

Table 6 lists how to move around and select information in the 3BM screens. When these commands are available in 3BM, they appear at the bottom of the 3BM screen.

Table 6: Working in 3BM 2

To do this	Use these keys
Move between units or drives in a list, between fields, and between buttons	Up and Down Arrow Keys OR Left and Right Arrow Keys OR Tab and Shift+Tab
<p>Select (or unselect) what is currently highlighted.</p> <p>A selection may be a drive in a list of drives, a button at the bottom of the screen, or a field in the middle of the screen.</p> <p>In lists, an asterisk appears to the left of selected drives or units</p>	Enter or the Spacebar
Display a drop-down list of available choices in a field	Enter
Move between choices in a field list	Up and Down Arrow Keys
Select all available drives	Alt+A
In the list of units, expand a selected unit to see any subunits and drives in the unit, or contract it to see only the heading again. (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only)	Shift+ Shift-

Table 6: Working in 3BM 2

To do this	Use these keys
Highlight one of the primary buttons on the main screen: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create Unit • Delete Unit • Maintain Unit • Settings • Information 	Alt+C Alt+D Alt+M Alt+S Alt+I
Specify (or unspecify) a drive as a hot spare	S
Return to starting values for this session in the 3ware BIOS Manager	F6 Note: F6 cannot bring back previous policy settings; they are saved when you exit the Policy screen.
Rescan the controller and update the status of units and drives	Alt+R
Return to the main 3ware BIOS Manager screen, from the Advanced Details screen	Any key
Move a highlighted unit up or down in the list of exportable units (The top-most unit will become the bootable unit, if you install the OS.)	Page Up Page Down (Available only when there are multiple units and a unit is highlighted.)
Display context sensitive help	F1 or Alt-F1
If you have multiple 3ware controllers in your system, return to the board selection screen.	Esc
Exit the utility and save or abandon all changes.	Esc
Exit the utility and save all changes	F8

Adjusting BIOS Loading Settings

3BM 2 includes the following settings that let you customize the behavior of the BIOS for the selected 9550SX or 9590SE controller. You can access these settings by selecting Settings > BIOS Settings from the main 3BM screen.

Power-On Self Test (POST) Display Options

Display Control. Specifies what level of detail to display on the start-up screen.

- **Full** displays all available information about the items attached to the controller, including available drives, hot spares, and configured units.
- **Unit Only** displays only configured units.
- **Summary** displays a one-sentence description of the items attached to the controller.

Array View. Specifies what level of information to show about configured units on the start-up screen.

- **Expanded** lists each unit and shows the specific drives that make up the unit.
- **Collapsed** lists only the configured units.

Pause Time. Sets the number of seconds that BIOS loading will pause to displaying the RAID configuration before continuing to boot the operating system. You can set a pause time of up to 10 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.

Full Screen Control. When you have many drives attached to a controller and choose to display the Full level of detail, the information can extend beyond a screens' worth. The Full Screen Control setting lets you specify whether to wait for a keystroke when the screen is full, before displaying additional information. This option can be either **No Key** or **Wait Key**.

BIOS Loading Options

Load Control. This setting lets you suppress loading of the BIOS for this controller. This can be useful for “headless” systems (without a monitor and keyboard) that have many types of PCI controllers and do not need to boot from the units.



Note: During the boot process, you can also bypass loading of the BIOS for all controllers for one time only by pressing **Alt-B**. This is useful to temporarily boot from a non-3ware device without having to change the system's boot order.

To change BIOS settings

- 1 On the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Settings** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the pop-up menu, select **BIOS** and press **Enter**.

The BIOS Options Settings screen appears.

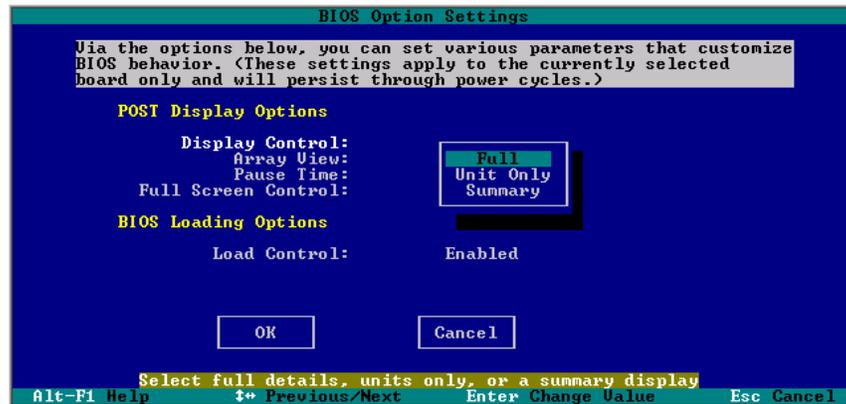


Figure 28. BIOS Option Settings Screen

- 3 **Tab** through the options and make the desired changes.
- 4 **Tab** to **OK** and press **Enter** to return to the main screen.

Displaying Controller Information

The Controller Information screen shows you details about your controller, and about the version of associated software installed on your system.

To see the controller information

- 1 On the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Information** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the pop-up menu, select **Controller** and press **Enter**.

(Note that the particular versions shown in the screen shot below may not be current.)

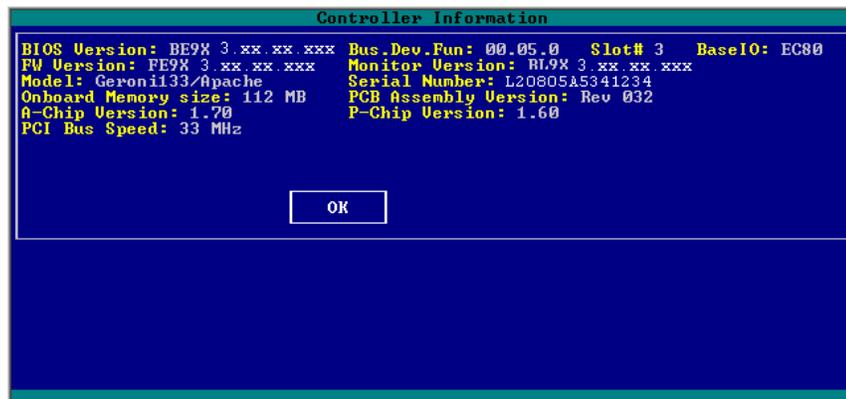


Figure 29. Advanced Detail Screen

To return to the main screen

- Press **Enter**.

Getting Help While Using 3BM

You can get help with using 3BM while you are in the BIOS manager.

- Press **F1** or **Alt-F1** at any time.

A description of the basic 3BM tasks appears.

When you're finished using help, press **Esc** to close the help window.

3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)



Note: 3DM 2 includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>).

3ware Disk Manager 2 (3DM 2) allows you to manage and view the status of 3ware RAID controllers and associated drives. 3DM runs as a service under Microsoft Windows, and as a daemon under Linux. When it is running, you can use your browser to view status and perform administrative tasks locally or remotely.

3DM can display information about 3ware RAID 7000-, 8000- and 9000-series RAID controllers. However, some version 2 features are only available for 9000-series controllers.

Two levels of access are provided: user and administrator. Users have view-only access, and can check the status of drives and units. Administrators can view and make changes, using 3DM to configure RAID units and designate hot spares, and to perform maintenance tasks on RAID units.

In this section overview, information is organized into the following topics:

- “Browser Requirements for 3DM” on page 66
- “Installing 3DM” on page 67
- “Starting 3DM and Logging In” on page 73
- “Working with the 3DM Screens” on page 76
- “Setting Up 3DM Preferences” on page 80
- “3DM 2 Reference” on page 84, which contains information about the fields and settings on each page in 3DM.

For additional information about doing particular tasks in 3DM, see the remaining sections in this guide.

Browser Requirements for 3DM

3DM runs in most current web browsers. Tested and supported browsers include:

- Mozilla Firefox
- Internet Explorer 5.5 and above
- Netscape 7 and above

Additional requirements:

- JavaScript must be enabled
- Cookies must be enabled
- For best viewing, use a screen resolution of 1024 X 768 or greater, and set colors to 16 bit color or greater.



Note: Because 3DM may be viewed in different browsers, the format and style of the 3DM browser windows illustrated in this chapter are examples only. (Screenshots were taken in Internet Explorer.) The actual “look” of the windows will depend on the browser, 3DM version and operating system in use.

Setting up Mozilla

Before setting up Mozilla Firefox, remember to download and install the latest available version of Mozilla Firefox. After installing the latest version, you may need to follow the instruction in the note below to have Mozilla Firefox working correctly with 3DM2.



Note: For security reasons, some web browsers do not allow connections to certain ports including port-1080 and 888. To override this on a per-port basis, the Mozilla release notes recommend adding a comma-separated list of ports to default/all.js (in your Mozilla installation directory). For example, to unblock port 888, use the following line:

```
pref("network.security.ports.banned.override", "888")
```

This file is located at:

```
/usr/lib/mozilla/defaults/pref/all.js
```

Installing 3DM

3DM 2 can be installed from the main 3ware CD that came with your 3ware RAID controller. You can also download the current version from the website at <http://www.3ware.com/support/download.asp>.

3DM must be installed on the system in which the controller is installed. 3DM does not have to be installed on remote systems in order to remotely manage a 3ware controller. You will need to enable remote access.

During installation, you will be asked to enter the following preferences for 3DM use. (Each of these preferences can be changed later, from within 3DM.)

- The HTTP port to be used as the listening port
- Whether remote access will be allowed
- Whether you want email alerts to be sent when errors occur, and who should receive them

Installing 3DM on a Microsoft Windows system

The 3ware RAID controller works with Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003. The latest service packs should be installed for any Windows release.

To install 3DM on a Windows system

- 1 Insert the 3DM CD-ROM and click **Install 3DM 2** when the menu appears.
Or, if you downloaded 3DM from the website, find the file setup.exe and double-click it to launch the setup.
- 2 If a command window opens, press any key to begin the installation process.
- 3 When the License Agreement screen appears, read and agree to the license information; then let the InstallShield Wizard guide you through the installation process.
- 4 On the **3DM Remote Monitoring and Security Configuration** screen (see Figure 30), use the settings to specify these things:
 - To change the HTTP port that 3DM will use as a listening port, check the first box.
If you do not know which port to use, leave the box unchecked and use the default port.

- To allow remote administration, uncheck the second checkbox.
When the second checkbox is checked, only localhost connections are allowed. Internet and Intranet connections are not allowed.

(You can change this setting later in 3DM.)



Figure 30. 3DM Remote Monitoring and Security Configuration Display

- 5 If the **3DM HTTP listening port setup** screen appears, enter the HTTP port you want to use.

This screen only appears when you check the first box on the **3DM Remote Monitoring and Security Configuration** screen.

(You can change this setting later within 3DM.)

- 6 On the **E-mail Notification Preferences** screen (see Figure 31) use the fields to specify initial email settings.



Note: If you do not want email alerts to be sent to anyone, leave “None” in these fields and click **Next** to go on to the next screen.

- In the **Server** field, enter the name or IP address of your email server.
You can get the IP address of your mail server by typing
`nslookup <file server name>`
To find the mail server name, ask your system administrator or check the e-mail preferences or setup options on your e-mail client.
- In the **Recipients** field, enter the e-mail address of the user who should receive the 3DM e-mail status messages.
You may enter multiple e-mail addresses, separating each entry with a comma (,).

- In the **Sender** field, enter the email address from which the email notifications will be sent. This is typically the local host name.

(You can change these settings later within 3DM.)

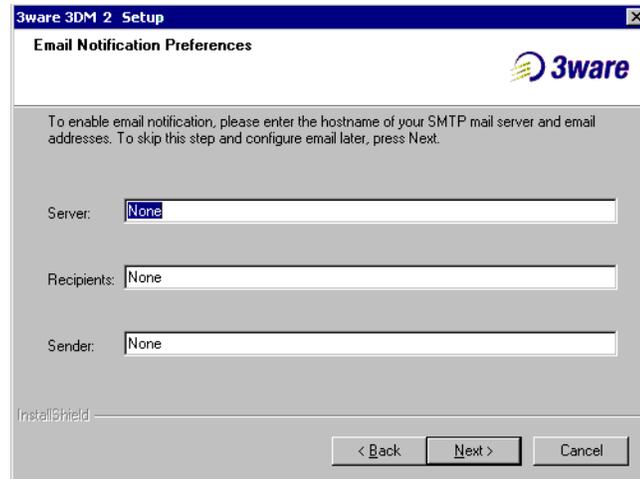


Figure 31. 3DM E-mail Notification Preferences

- 7 Continue with the installation as prompted, clicking **Next** to move to the next screen, and **Finish** when you reach the last screen.

3DM Installation gives you the option of starting 3DM and opening the browser window.

- 8 If you elect to launch the web interface, a Security Alert may appear, as shown in Figure 32. Click **Yes** continue.

You may install the certificate if you do not want to see this alert in the future. To do so, click View Certificate and then click Install Certificate.

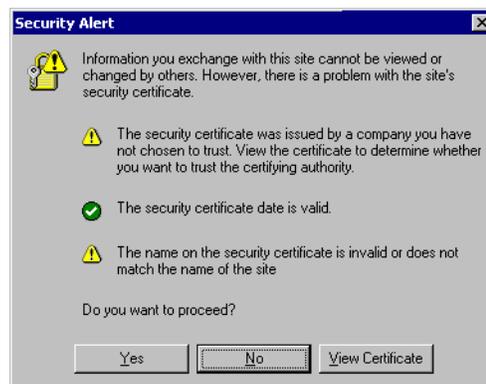


Figure 32. Security Alert dialog box

- 9 When the first 3DM screen appears in your browser, log in as Administrator and use the default password, 3ware.



Notes:

You can start 3DM later by choosing **3DM2** from the **Start/Programs/3ware/3DM2** menu.

If you change, add, or remove an IP address, or change the machine name of the machine on which you have installed 3DM 2, you will need to recreate the security certificate. You can do so by re-installing 3DM 2, or by deleting the file `3dm2.pem` and restarting the 3DM 2 service. Under Windows, this file is located in the same directory in which you installed 3DM 2. Under Linux, the file resides in `/etc/3dm2`. You may also want to delete the installed/cached security certificate from your browser.

Uninstalling 3DM under Microsoft Windows

Use the Add or Remove Programs control panel to uninstall 3DM.

- From the **Startup** menu, choose **Control Panels > Add or Remove Programs**.
- In the Add or Remove Programs control panel, select **3DM** and click **Change/Remove**.

Installing 3DM for Linux or FreeBSD



Note: If you downloaded `3DM_Linux.zip` from the website, unzip the file to root (or to any other working directory) and change Directory (CD) to that directory (for example: `/root`). Then start the following procedure at step 3, substituting `/mnt` with `/root` or your installation directory.

If you are installing for FreeBSD, replace `/linux` with `/freebsd`.

To start the installation

- 1 Insert the 3ware software installation CD-ROM for Linux into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Mount the CD-ROM disk:
`mount /dev/cdrom /mnt`
- 3 Change the directory and run the install script:

For Linux:

```
cd /mnt/packages/3dm2/linux
./install.3dm --i
```

For FreeBSD:

```
cd /mnt/packages/3dm2/freebsd
./install.3dm --i
```

To specify initial setup for 3DM 2

During installation, you will be prompted with a series of questions that determine initial 3DM settings. You can change these later, from within 3DM.

(The first question appears for Linux, but not for FreeBSD.)

- 1 Was RPM used to install the driver and/or 3DM?

The default answer is no. (“RPM” stands for RedHat Package Manager.)

- 2 Please enter the location of the help documentation (default is /usr/local/doc/3dm)

Press Enter to accept the default location and display the next question, or enter the path at which you want the documentation to be installed.

- 3 Would you like to have e-mail notification enabled (Y/N)?

E-mail notification sends an email message when an event occurs.

The default answer to this question is “yes”.

If you enable e-mail notification you will be asked to provide additional information: the name of the mail server, the user name for the person who will send the E-mail notification (typically the local host name) and the user name for the person who will receive the e-mail notification (typically the system administrator).

Please enter the name of your mail server: (default is local host name)

Please enter the name of the user you want sending e-mail notification: (default is root)

Please enter the name of the user you want receiving e-mail notification: (default is 3ware_admin)

To enter multiple e-mail addresses, separate them by a comma or a semicolon:

- 4 Please enter the port number you would like to use for web monitoring (default is 888)

If you do not know what port to use, select the default:

- 5 Would you like 3DM connection security to limit connections to localhost only? (default is yes)

If you want to be able to use 3DM for remote administration, change this to No.

- 6 Change the directory and then eject the CD-ROM disk when finished:

```
cd /home
eject cdrom
```

Uninstalling 3DM under Linux or FreeBSD

To uninstall 3DM for Linux or FreeBSD

- 1 Insert the 3ware software installation CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Mount the CD-ROM disk:

```
mount /dev/cdrom /mnt
```

- 3 Change the directory and run the uninstall script:

(For FreeBSD, replace “linux” with “freebsd” in the path shown in this step.)

For Linux:

```
cd /mnt/packages/3dm2/linux/x86  
./install.3dm --u
```

Note that if you downloaded 3DM from the web, replace “/mnt/” in the previous command with “/root/”

- 4 Eject the CD-ROM disk when finished:

```
cd /home  
eject cdrom
```



Note: If 3DM Linux is reinstalled or restarted, close any open web browsers before starting 3DM again to close the server socket.

Starting 3DM and Logging In

3DM runs as a service under Windows, and as a daemon under Linux.

It is a good idea to leave 3DM running on the system that contains your 3ware RAID controller. That way email alerts can be sent by 3DM, and administrators can manage the controller remotely, if remote administration is enabled.

You can access the 3DM screens to check status information and manage your 3ware RAID controller by logging in to the 3DM screens in your browser.

Starting 3DM under Linux

3DM should start automatically after installation and upon bootup.

To start 3DM manually

- 1 Login as root.
- 2 Afterwards, type:
`/etc/init.d/3dm2 start`
- 3 Open your browser and enter the URL for your system.

For 32-bit versions of Linux, use `https://localhost:888/`

For 64-bit versions of Linux, use: `http://localhost:888/`

You can also replace “localhost” with the IP address of the computer that contains the 3ware controller. For example: `https://<IP address>:888/`



Note: If you are using a 64-bit version of Linux, use “http://” instead of “https://”.

The 3DM login screen appears.

Starting 3DM under Microsoft Windows

- From the Start menu, choose **Programs > 3ware > 3DM 2**.

Your default browser opens and displays the URL for your local controller.

The default URL is `https://localhost:888/`.

You can also replace “localhost” with the IP address of the computer that contains the 3ware controller. For example: `https://<IP address>:888/`



Note: If you close your browser, 3DM continues to run in the background on the system.

Viewing 3DM Remotely via a Standard Web Browser

When remote administration is enabled, you can use 3DM to check status and administer your 3ware RAID controller from a browser on any computer, over an internet connection.

You do not need to install the 3DM software on the remote computer.

Remote connections can be enabled from the 3DM 2 Settings Page.

To connect to 3DM2 through your web browser

- In the address line of your browser, enter the URL or IP of the system containing the 3ware RAID controller.

If you do not know the URL or IP for the system, you can contact your network administrator or from a Windows command prompt, type `ipconfig`. From a Linux command prompt, type `ifconfig`.



Note: When using 3DM to access a remote system, the time on the local system must match the time on the file server. If the time varies by more than 30 minutes, it will not be possible to remotely monitor the system (you will not be able to log in). If you are in a different time zone, you must first change the time of the local system to match the time of the remote system.

Logging In

When you first view 3DM in a browser, you must log in before you can view or change any information.

Two levels of access are provided:

- *Users* can check the status of the controller, units, and attached drives.
- *Administrators* can check status, configure, and maintain the equipment.

(Administrator and User status in 3DM is not related to Administrator/User settings in the operating system.)

To log in to 3DM

- 1 On the 3DM logon screen, select whether you are a **User** or **Administrator**.
- 2 Enter your password and click **Login**.

If you are logging in for the first time after installing 3DM, the default password for both User and Administrator is *3ware*.



Note: If you forget the passwords, uninstalling and reinstalling 3DM resets the passwords to *3ware*.

Working with the 3DM Screens

3DM's features are organized on a series of pages you view in your browser.

After you log in to 3DM, the Summary page shows a list of controllers installed in the computer at the URL you specified.



Note: If you expect to see a controller that is not listed, it may not be compatible with the driver that is loaded; a firmware flash upgrade may be required.

Operating system and version on the server.

Address of the system to which you are connected.

Menu bar

Messages area

List of controllers on this system

Time of last page refresh

Version of 3DM

3ware 3DM[®] 2 SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4) ADMINISTRATOR logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Summary

Controller Summary

ID	Model	Serial #	Firmware	Driver	Status
0	9500S-12	3ware Internal Use	FGXX 2.01.00.030	2.4.0.12	OK
1	9500S-8	3ware Internal Use	FGXX 2.01.00.030	2.4.0.12	OK

Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 33. 3DM Main Screen

The menu bar across the top of the screen gives you access to other pages in 3DM. You can move between pages by using the menu bar, or by clicking a link on the page.

The main area of the page provides summary or detail information about your 3ware RAID controller and the resources connected to it.

As you work in 3DM, the Messages area just below the menu bar displays information about the results of commands you have selected.

3DM Menus

The 3DM menu bar groups access to a number of 3DM pages on menus, and provides direct link access to others.

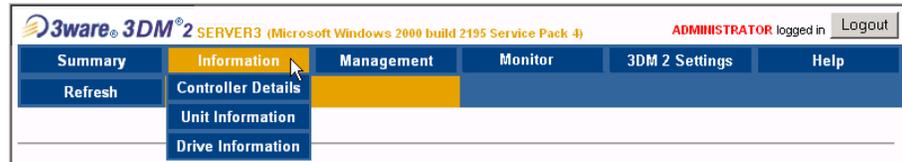


Figure 34. 3DM Menu Bar

Status information is available from the **Information menu**. You can view controller, unit, and drive information for a particular controller.

The **Management menu** gives you access to tasks used for managing controller-level settings (background task rate, unit policies such as enabling of unit write cache, and controller settings that affect all units managed by the controller), tasks that can be scheduled (rebuild, verify, and self-test), and maintenance of individual units. Unit configuration can also be done through the Management > Maintenance page.

The **Monitor menu** gives you access to the Alarms page and the BBU page. The **Alarms** page shows a list of alarms, including the specific alarm message, and the exact date and time it occurred. The BBU page shows the status of a Battery Backup Unit (BBU), if one is installed, and allows you to test the battery.

The **3DM 2 Settings** page lets you set preferences, including email notification for alarms, passwords, page refresh frequency, whether remote access is permitted, and the incoming port which 3DM will use for listening.

Help lets you access information about using 3DM, and provides access to an electronic copy of this User Guide.

Viewing Information About Different Controllers in 3DM

If you have more than one controller in the system, you select the one you want to see details about from the drop-down list at the right of the menu bar.

This drop-down is available on all pages that provide controller-specific features.



Note: Throughout these instructions, *current controller* is used to refer to the controller which is currently selected in this drop-down list.

Refreshing the Screen

You can refresh the data on the screen at any time by clicking **Refresh Page** in the menu bar. This causes 3DM to update the information shown with current information from the controller and associated drives.

Automatic refreshes can also be set. For details, see “Setting the Frequency of Page Refreshes” on page 83.



Note: If you click Refresh on the browser window, you will be taken back to the Summary page.

3DM Screens and What They're Used For

Table 7 shows a list of the pages you work with in 3DM and describes what they are used for. Details about each page and the fields and features on it are provided in the section “3DM 2 Reference” on page 84. The page names in Table 7 provide links to details about that page.

Table 7: List of 3DM Pages

3DM Page	Description
Controller Summary Page	Provides basic information about each 3ware RAID controller in your system. To see this page, click Summary in the menu bar.
Controller Details Page	Provides detailed information about the current controller. To see this page, choose Information > Controller Details from the menu bar.

Table 7: List of 3DM Pages

3DM Page	Description
Unit Information Page	<p>Shows a list of the units on the current controller and provides summary information about each unit.</p> <p>To see this page, choose Information > Unit Information from the menu bar or click an ID number on the Controller Summary.</p>
Unit Details Page	<p>Shows details about a particular unit.</p> <p>To see this page, click an ID number on the Unit Information page.</p>
Drive Information Page	<p>Shows a list of drives on the current controller and provides summary information about each drive.</p> <p>To see this page, choose Information > Drive Information from the menu bar.</p>
Drive Details Window	<p>Shows the SMART data for a specific drive, and shows additional detail information for the drive.</p> <p>To see this page, click the Port # for a drive on the Drive Information page.</p>
Controller Settings Page	<p>Lets you view settings that affect the units on the current controller and change some of those settings.</p> <p>Controller-level settings include background task rate, Auto-Rebuild, Auto-Carving, Carve Size, and policies that can only be changed in the BIOS or CLI.</p> <p>Unit-level settings include specifying the StorSave Profile and enabling or disabling the Write Cache, Auto-Verify, Continue on Error During Rebuild, and Queuing.</p> <p>To see this page, choose Management > Controller Settings from the menu bar.</p>
Scheduling Page	<p>Lets you view and change the schedule for tasks that affect all units on the current controller.</p> <p>To see this page, choose Management > Scheduling from the menu bar.</p>
Maintenance Page	<p>Lets you configure new units and make changes to existing units.</p> <p>To view this page, choose Management > Maintenance from the menu bar.</p>
Alarms Page	<p>Shows a list of alarms, including the specific alarm message, and the exact date and time it occurred.</p> <p>To view this page, choose Monitor > Alarms on the menu bar.</p>

Table 7: List of 3DM Pages

3DM Page	Description
Battery Backup Page	Shows the status of a Battery Backup Unit (BBU), if one is installed, and allows you to test the battery. To view this page, choose Monitor > Battery Backup on the menu bar.
3DM 2 Settings Page	Lets you set preferences, including email notification for alarms, passwords, page refresh frequency, whether remote access is permitted, and the incoming port which 3DM will use for listening. To view this page, click 3DM 2 Settings on the menu bar.

Setting Up 3DM Preferences

The 3DM 2 Settings page lets you define preference settings that affect the overall operation of 3DM. Most of these settings are specified initially during installation of 3DM.

On the 3DM 2 Settings page you can perform the following tasks:

- Setting and Changing 3DM Passwords
- Managing E-mail Event Notification
- Enabling and Disabling Remote Access
- Setting the Incoming Port #
- Setting the Frequency of Page Refreshes

Setting and Changing 3DM Passwords

3DM provides different access levels for users and administrators.

The Administrator access level allows the user to fully configure 3DM. The User access level allows the user to view pages within 3DM. These passwords work independently of each other.

The default password for both the User and Administrator is “3ware”.

Passwords are case sensitive.

You can only change passwords if you are logged in as Administrator. If you change the Administrator password, you will be automatically logged out, and must log back in with the new password.

To set or change the password

- 1 Click **3DM 2 Settings** on the 3DM menu bar.
- 2 On the 3DM 2 Settings Page, in the **Password** section, select the type of password you want to change: **User** or **Administrator**.
- 3 Type the current password in the **Current Password** field.
If you are changing the password for the first time, the factory-set default password is 3ware.
- 4 Enter the new password in the **New Password** field and again in the **Confirm New Password** field.
- 5 Click the **Change Password** button to enact the change.



Note: If you forget your password, you can uninstall 3DM and then reinstall it. This will reset the password to the default password, 3ware.

Managing E-mail Event Notification

3DM can notify you when the 3ware RAID controller requires attention, such as when a disk unit becomes degraded and is no longer fault tolerant.

Event notification can only occur while 3DM is running, so it is recommended that 3DM be left running on the system that contains the 3ware RAID controller.

When events occur, notification can be e-mailed to one or more recipients. You can specify the type of events for which notifications will be sent by selecting the severity:

- **Information** will send e-mails for all alarms
- **Warning** will send e-mail for alarms with severity of Warning and Error only.
- **Error** will send e-mail for alarms with severity of Error only.

For more information about events and alarms, see “Viewing Alarms” on page 175.

Event notification is initially set up during 3DM installation, but can be changed on the 3DM 2 Settings page.

To set up event notification

- 1 Click **3DM 2 Settings** on the menu bar.
- 2 In the **E-mail Notification** section of the 3DM 2 Settings Page, enter or change the settings you want.
 - Enable or Disable all notifications.
 - Set the severity level of events for which e-mail notifications are sent.
 - Specify the email address of the sender. This will appear in the “From” field of the e-mail.
 - Enter the e-mail address(es) to which notifications are sent. (Separate multiple addresses with a comma (,) or a semicolon (;).
 - Enter the SMTP server name or IP of your mail server.
- 3 Click **Save E-mail Settings**.

To send a test message

You can send a test message to make sure you’ve entered the e-mail notification settings correctly.

- Click **Send Test Message**.

Enabling and Disabling Remote Access

When remote access is enabled, a user can connect to 3DM over the internet or an intranet, to check status or administer the controller and associated drives.

If remote access is disabled and a user attempts to connect to 3DM remotely, they will see the following error message: “Remote Access to 3DM has been disabled. Please connect using the local machine by entering “localhost” in the URL bar.”

Remote access can be enabled or disabled on the 3DM 2 Settings page.

To enable or disable remote access

- 1 Click **3DM 2 Settings** on the menu bar.
- 2 In the **Remote Access** section of the 3DM 2 Settings Page, select either **Enabled** or **Disabled** in the **Allow Remote Connections** field.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top of the screen confirms that remote access has been enabled or disabled.

Setting the Incoming Port

You can set the port which 3DM uses to listen for incoming messages. If you are not sure which port would be the best to use, leave this set to the default port of 888.

To set the incoming port

- 1 Click **3DM 2 Settings** on the menu bar.
- 2 In the **Incoming Port #** section of the 3DM 2 Settings Page, enter the port number in the **Listening Port** field.
- 3 Click **Change Port**.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top of the screen confirms that the listening port has been changed.

Setting the Frequency of Page Refreshes

Since the status of the drives attached to your 3ware RAID controller can change while you are viewing information about them in 3DM, it is important to refresh the page information regularly. That way you can be assured that the information you see in 3DM is current.

You can manually refresh the information on a page by clicking **Refresh Page** in the menu bar. But you can also have 3DM refresh the information on a regular basis.

To set the frequency of page refreshes

- 1 Click **3DM 2 Settings** on the menu bar.
- 2 In the **Page Refresh** section of the 3DM 2 Settings Page, select how often you want the page to be refreshed in the **Minutes Between Refresh** field.



Note: If you do not want 3DM to refresh the screen automatically, select **Never** in the **Minutes Between Refresh** field. You can then refresh manually by clicking Refresh on your web browser.

3DM 2 Reference

This section includes details about the fields and features available on the pages you work with throughout 3DM 2. It is organized by page, as the pages are organized on the 3DM menu bar.

- Controller Summary Page
- Controller Details Page
- Unit Information Page
- Unit Details Page
- Drive Information Page
- Drive Details Window
- Controller Settings Page
- Scheduling Page
- Maintenance Page
- Alarms Page
- Battery Backup Page
- 3DM 2 Settings Page

Controller Summary Page

The screenshot shows the 3ware 3DM 2 web interface. The browser title is "3ware 3DM - Summary - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The address bar shows "https://192.168.2.143:888". The page header includes the 3ware logo, "3DM 2 SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4)", and "ADMINISTRATOR logged in" with a "Logout" button. A navigation menu contains "Summary", "Information", "Management", "Monitor", "3DM 2 Settings", and "Help". Below the menu is a "Refresh" button and a "Summary" button. The main content area features a "Controller Summary" table with the following data:

ID	Model	Serial #	Firmware	Driver	Status
0	9550SX-8	F18801A4160063	FGXX 3.xx.xx.xxx	3.x.x.xx	OK
1	9550SX-12	F18801A4160056	FGXX 3.xx.xx.xxx	3.x.x.xx	OK

Below the table, the text reads: "Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM", "This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)", "3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010", and "Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved."

Figure 35. Controller Summary Page



Note: The software version shown in the screenshots in this manual are preliminary examples only. For the current released and tested version number, refer to the 9000 release notes.

The Summary page appears after you first logon to 3DM, and when you click the Summary link in the menu bar.

The Summary page provides basic information about each 3ware RAID controller in your system. To see details about the units in a controller, click the link in the ID column.

ID. The ID that the operating system assigns to the controller.



Note: The controller ID you see in 3DM 2 may not match the number that you see for the same controller in 3DM version 1.x.

Model. The model name of the controller. (The model number is also printed on a sticker on the outside bracket of the controller.)

Serial #. The serial number of the controller. (The serial number is also printed on a sticker on the outside bracket of the controller.)

Firmware. The firmware version running on the controller.

Driver. The driver version being used to interact with the controller.

Status. The overall status of the controller. Possible statuses include OK, Warning, Error, and No Units. **Warning** indicates that a background task is currently being performed (rebuilding, migrating, or initializing). **Error** indicates that a unit is degraded or inoperable. If both Error and Warning conditions exist, the status will appear as Error.

Controller Details Page

3ware 3DM² AUTHORIZ-H8YA15 (Windows 2000 Service Pack 4) Administrator logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Controller Details Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-16ML)

Controller Details (Controller ID 0)

Model	9550SX-16ML
Serial #	M21602A5260054
Firmware	FE9X 3.xx.xx.xxx
Driver	3.xx.xx.xx
BIOS	BE9X 3.xx.xx.xxx
Boot Loader	BL9X 3.xx.xx.xxx
Memory Installed	112 MB
Bus Type	PCI
Bus Width	64 bits
Bus Speed	33 Mhz
# of Ports	8
# of Units	1
# of Drives	4
Error Log	Download Error Log

Last updated Thu, Mar 16, 2006 10:14:58AM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.015
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 36. Controller Details Page

The Controller Details page appears when you choose **Information > Controller Details** from the menu bar.

The Controller Details page provides detailed information about the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar.

You can also open or download an error log from this screen.

Model. The model name of the controller.

Serial #. The serial number of the controller.

Firmware. The firmware version running on the controller.

Driver. The driver version being used to interact with the controller.

BIOS. The BIOS version on the controller.

Monitor. The Monitor version on the controller. This field appears only for 7000- and 8000-series controllers.

Boot Loader. Boot Loader version on the controller. This field appears only for 9000-series controllers.

Memory Installed. The amount of memory installed on the controller.

Bus Type. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the bus type used on the controller is shown: PCI, PCI-X, or PCI-E.

Bus Width. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the bus width is shown: 32 or 64 for PCI-X slots; x4, x8, or x16, for PCI-E slots.

Bus Speed. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the speed of the bus used on the controller is shown.

of Ports. The number of total ports on the controller, regardless of whether each currently has a drive connected.

of Units. The number of units on the controller.

of Drives. The number of drives connected to the controller.

Download Error Log: Click on this link to download the firmware error log to your computer. This feature is important when contacting AMCC for support with your controller. It will help AMCC identify the problem you encountered.

Unit Information Page

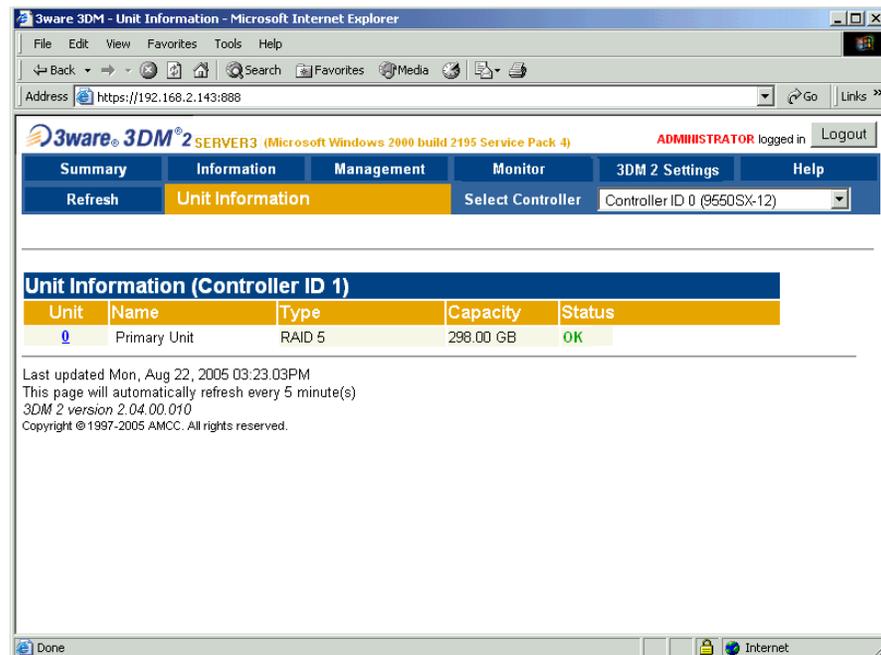


Figure 37. Unit Information Page

The Unit Information page appears when you choose **Information > Unit Information** from the menu bar, or when you click an ID number on the Controller Summary page.

The Unit Information page shows a list of the units on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar and provides summary information about each unit.

To see details about a particular unit, click the link in the Unit # column.

Unit #. The unit number assigned to the unit by the firmware. For 9000-series controllers, unit numbers are in sequential order.

Name. For 9000series controllers, if a name has been given to this unit, it shows here. If it is empty, no name has been assigned. You can name your unit in the **Unit Names** section of the **Management > Controller Settings** page.

Type. The type of unit, specified during configuration: RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50, Single Disk, JBOD, or Spare. For details about each of the RAID levels, see “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5.

Capacity. The logical capacity (size) of the unit.



Note: 3DM 2 displays the capacity (in MBytes or GBytes) the same way that Microsoft Windows and Linux operating systems do: as 1KB = 1024 bytes. Previous versions of 3DM 1.x used the 1KB = 1000 bytes definition. Consequently capacities of units listed under 3DM v 1.x may appear to be larger than they do under 3DM 2.

Status. The operational status of the unit: OK, Rebuilding, Initializing, Migrating, Verifying, Degraded, or Inoperable (missing drives). When a unit is Rebuilding, Initializing, Migrating, or Verifying, the percentage (%) complete is also shown.

Note: If an asterisk (*) appears next to the status of a unit, there is an error on one of the drives in the unit. This feature provides a diagnostic capability for potential problem drives. The error may not be a repeated error, and may be caused by an ECC error, SMART failure, or a device error. Rescanning the controller will clear the drive error status if the condition no longer exists.

Unit Details Page

3ware 3DM² AUTHORIZ-118YA15 (Windows 2000 Service Pack 4) Administrator logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Unit Information Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-16ML)

Unit 0 (Controller ID 0)

Status **OK**
 Name PrimaryRAID5
 Serial # B605Y5PH194494000092
 Capacity 558.77 GB
 Type RAID 5 (not initialized)
 Stripe 64kB
 Volumes 2
 Subunits 3

Subunit 0	Subunit 1	Subunit 2
Status OK	Status OK	Status OK
Type DISK	Type DISK	Type DISK
Port 4	Port 3	Port 2

Last updated Thu, Mar 16, 2006 11:01:08AM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.015
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 38. Unit Details Page

The Unit Details page appears when you click an ID number on the Unit Information page. Because it is a sub-page of Unit Information, the page title in the menu bar continues to display “Unit Information” even when you view details of a unit. To return to the list of units, click **Unit Information** in the menu bar.

The Unit Details page shows details about a particular unit. The specific information shown depends on what type of unit it is. For example, details about a RAID 5 unit made up of three subunits, each of which contains one drive, will include details about the unit and each subunit, as shown in Figure 38. However, if the unit is a Single Disk, only information about one disk will be shown.

Details on this page may include all or some of the following information described below.

To see details about a particular drive, click the Port #. You’ll see a list of all drives, with the drive you selected highlighted.

Status. The operational status of the unit or subunit: OK, Rebuilding, Migrating, Initializing, Verifying, Degraded, or Inoperable (missing drives). When a unit is Rebuilding, Initializing, or Verifying, the percentage (%) complete is also shown.

Capacity. The total capacity of the unit (capacities of subunits are not shown).

Type. The type of unit or subunit. RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50, Single Disk, Spare, JBOD, or Disk

Volumes. Displays the number of volumes in a unit. This is usually 1. If you created a boot volume on this unit, or if you have a unit on which you have enabled the auto-carving policy, you will see the number of volumes into which the unit has been divided. For more information, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

Stripe. The stripe size of the unit, if applicable.

Subunits. If the unit has subunits, details of the subunits are shown.

Note: If an asterisk (*) appears next to the status of a subunit, there is an error on one of the drives in the subunit. This feature provides a diagnostic capability for potential problem drives. The error may not be a repeated error, and may be caused by an ECC error, SMART failure, or a device error. Rescanning the controller will clear the drive error status if the condition no longer exists.

Port #. If the Type is Disk, Single Disk, JBOD, or Spare, the port to which the drive is connected is shown. For multiple drive units, the port numbers are shown in the subunits section. The port number is a link to the Drive Information page.

Drive Information Page

3ware 3DM[®]2 AUTHORIZ-H8YA15 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service P: Administrator logged in Logout)

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Drive Information Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)

Drive Information (Controller ID 0)							
Port	Model	Capacity	Serial #	Firmware	Unit	Status	Blink
0	Maxtor 7B300SD	279.48 GB	B605X31H	BANC1980	0	OK	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Maxtor 7B300SD	279.48 GB	B605Y4CH	BANC1980	0	OK	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	NOT PRESENT	--	--	--	--	--	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	NOT PRESENT	--	--	--	--	--	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Maxtor 7B300SD	279.48 GB	B6060VHH	BANC1980	1	OK	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Maxtor 7B300SD	279.48 GB	B605Y5PH	BANC1B10	1	OK	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	NOT PRESENT	--	--	--	--	--	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	NOT PRESENT	--	--	--	--	--	<input type="checkbox"/>

Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 39. Drive Information Page

The Drive Information page appears when you choose **Information > Drive Information** from the menu bar, or when you click a port # on the Unit Details page. If you arrive at this page from the port # hyperlink on the Unit Information page, the line showing the port # you clicked on is highlighted.

The Drive Information page shows a list of drives on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar, and a summary of each one.

To see additional detail about a particular drive, including the SMART data, whether NCQ is supported and enabled, and the SATA Link speed, click the link in the Port # column.

Port #. The port to which the drive is connected.

Model. The model of the drive.

Capacity. The physical capacity of the drive. (Note that the capacity as shown on 3DM screen is calculated as 1KB = 1024. This amount may differ from the capacity that is printed on the disk drive, where it typically has been calculated as 1K = 1000. Consequently, the capacity of the drive may appear smaller in the 3DM screens. No storage capacity is actually lost; the size has simply been calculated differently for consistency.)

Serial #. The serial number of the drive.

Firmware. The firmware version of the drive.

Unit. The unit the drive belongs to, if applicable.

Status. The status of the drive: OK, Not Supported, Read Timeout, Read Failure, Orphan, DCB Data Check, Unsupp DCB, Unconv DCB, Offline JBOD, Not Present, Device Error, SMART Failure, ECC Error, or Drive Removed. (In the event of a problem, the status shown for the drive can be useful to customer support.)



Note: In most cases, the status of the drive will not correspond to the status of the unit, shown on the Unit Information page.

Blink. Check this box to cause the LED for this drive to blink, if it is in a chassis that has a Chassis Control Unit (CCU) and is connected to the I²C connector on the 9550SX or 9590SE controller.

SMART Data

SMART data is displayed as hex values.

Consult your disk drive manufacturer for information on how to interpret the SMART data. The SMART data meaning varies by disk drive manufacturer and model.

Controller Settings Page

The screenshot displays the 3ware 3DM 2 web interface. At the top, it shows the user is logged in as Administrator. The navigation menu includes Summary, Information, Management, Monitor, 3DM 2 Settings, and Help. The 'Controller Settings' tab is selected, and the controller ID is set to 0 (9550SX-12).

Background Task Rate (Controller ID 0)

Rebuild/Migrate Rate	Faster Rebuild <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Faster I/O
Verify Rate	Faster Verify <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Faster I/O

Unit Policies (Controller ID 0)

	Write Cache	Auto Verify	Continue on Source Error during Rebuild	Queuing	StorSave
Unit 0 [RAID 5]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Performance

Unit Names (Controller ID 0)

Unit 0 [RAID 5]	PrimaryRAID5
-----------------	--------------

Buttons: Save Names, Reset Names

Other Controller Settings (Controller ID 0)

Auto Rebuild	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Auto-Carving	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Carve Size	1024 <input type="button" value="Submit"/>
Number of Drives per Spin-up	1
Delay between Spin-up	2 second(s)
Export Unconfigured Disk	No

Footer: Last updated Thu, Mar 09, 2006 12:42:38PM. This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s).

Figure 41. Controller Settings Page

The Controller Settings page appears when you choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar.

The Controller Settings page lets you view and change settings that affect the units on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar.

There are four main sections on this page:

- Background Task Rate
- Unit Policies
- Unit Names
- Other Controller Settings

Background Task Rate

The Background Task Rate fields let you change the balance of background tasks and I/O performed by the controller.

9000-series controllers show separate settings for Rebuild/Migrate Rate and Verify Rate, as shown in Figure 41. The Rebuild/Migrate Rate also applies to initialization. Although the same rate is used for rebuilding, migrating, and initializing, migrating has the highest priority.

7000- and 8000-series controllers show only one setting for Task Rate; it applies to both rebuild and verify rates. Note that this rate is not persistent following a reboot for 7/8000 controllers.

The five radio buttons let you set the ratio at which background tasks are performed in comparison to I/O. The furthest left buttons set the firmware to the fastest settings for background tasks settings. This means, maximum processing time will be given to background tasks rather than I/O. The furthest right buttons set the firmware to the slowest background rates, giving maximum processing time to I/O.

For additional information, see “About Background Tasks” on page 177.

Unit Policies

For units on 9000-series controllers, you can enable or disable these policies: **Write Cache**, **Auto-verify**, and **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild**. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, you can also enable or disable **Queuing**, and select a **StorSave Profile**. 3DM lists each unit on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar, and shows you whether the policies are currently enabled or disabled for each unit.

This section does not appear for 7000- and 8000- series controllers.

Unit Write Cache. You can enable or disable write cache for each unit. 3DM lists each unit on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar, and shows you whether the write cache is currently enabled or disabled for it.

Write cache is a combination of the physical hard drives’ write cache as well as the controller’s memory, depending on what type of unit you are using.

For 9500S controllers, a **Disable Write Cache on Unit Degrade** setting can be set in 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM). You can see if this setting is enabled in the **Other Controller Settings** field at the bottom of this Controller Settings page. If **Disable Write Cache on Unit Degrade** is enabled, upon degrade of a unit, the write cache will automatically be disabled, even if you enable write cache in the Unit Write Cache field. (This option does not apply to 9550SX and 9590SE controllers; the feature is integrated into the StorSave policy.)

For additional information, see “Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache” on page 143.

Auto-verify. The Auto-verify policy causes verify tasks to be performed automatically, whenever the controller firmware algorithms determine that a verify task is needed. This feature is designed to make verification of units easier. When you check this box, the controller will run verify tasks as they are required.

If there is no schedule set up for verify tasks, then the controller firmware can initiate a verify task at any time. If a verify time window is scheduled, then the controller will not start a verify task for that unit outside the time window, and may or may not start a verify task for that unit within the time window, depending on whether one is needed.

If Auto-verify is not set and there is no schedule, you must manually specify when you want to run a verify, on the 3DM **Management** page. If a schedule is set for verify, then the verify that you manually start will only run during the scheduled time.

Continue on Source Error During Rebuild. This policy applies only to units which are redundant. (For units which are not redundant, a check box is not available.) When this policy is set, ECC errors are ignored when they are encountered during a rebuild. When this policy is not set, a rebuild will abort upon encountering an ECC error and the unit will be set back to Degraded.

Since this option could result in the loss of some source data in the event of source errors, select this option only if you want to ensure that a rebuild will complete successfully without manually intervention. If the rebuild fails and **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild** is not selected, then you have the option to start a rebuild manually. It is recommended that a file system check be executed when the rebuild completes.



Note: The policy **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild** is equivalent to the “Force continue on source errors” option in 3DM v 1.x and the “ignoreEcc” option in the CLI.

Queuing. This policy enables or disables Native Command Queuing (NCQ) for drives in the unit. By default, queuing is disabled. You can enable it, if desired.

NCQ only operates when the feature is enabled at both the drive and the controller. If a drive does not support NCQ, the policy setting for the controller is ignored.

Enabling NCQ can improve performance in many applications; it causes command reordering to be done on the drive, itself.

StorSave Profile. The 9550SX and 9590SE, like the 9500S, supports StorSave. For the 9550SX and 9590SE models, StorSave II includes an option that lets you change the StorSave Profile used for a unit. Three profiles are available: Protection, Balanced, and Performance. These profiles automatically adjust several different factors that affect protection and

performance, including whether FUA (Forced Unit Access) is honored, whether Write Journaling is enabled, and whether Disable Cache on Degrade is enabled. For additional information, see “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149.



Note: If the write cache setting is disabled for a unit, the StorSave Profile capability does not apply and is automatically disabled.

Unit Names

On 9000-series controllers, units can be assigned names. A name can be assigned when the unit is created and can be changed from this screen. For additional information, see “Naming a Unit” on page 141.

Other Controller Settings

For 9000-series controllers, the Other Controller settings displays information about additional settings, some of which can only be changed in the BIOS (3BM). For more information see “Viewing and Setting Controller Policies” on page 117.

This section does not appear for 7000- and 8000- series controllers.

Auto-Rebuild. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the Auto-Rebuild policy determines how the controller firmware will attempt to rebuild degraded units.

When Auto-Rebuild is disabled, only spares will be used to automatically rebuild degraded units. When Auto-Rebuild is enabled, the firmware will automatically select drives to use for rebuilding a degraded unit using the following priority order.

- Smallest usable spare.
- Smallest usable unconfigured (available) drive.
- Smallest usable failed drive.

For additional information, see “Setting the Auto-Rebuild Policy” on page 120.

Auto-Carving. Auto-carving can be enabled or disabled by selecting the appropriate radio button.

When this feature is enabled, any unit that is over a specified size (known as the *carve size*) will be broken down into multiple volumes of that size, plus a remainder volume. The default carve size is 2048 GB (2 TB). For example, using the default carve size, if the unit is 2.5 TB then it will contain two volumes, with the first volume containing 2 TB and the second volume containing 0.5 TB. If the unit is 5.0 TB then it will contain 3 volumes, with

the first two volumes containing 2 TB each and the last volume containing 1 TB. If a specific Boot Volume was also specified in 3BM, the first volume will be the size specified for the Boot Volume, and then the carve size will be applied to the remainder of the unit.

Carve Size. Sets a size for dividing up units into volumes when Auto-Carving is enabled. This setting can be between 1024 and 2048 GB.

Number of Drives Per Spin-up. Number of drives that will spin up at the same time when the controller is powered up. (This setting only applies when the feature is supported by the disk drives.)

Delay between Spin-ups. The delay time (in seconds) between drive groups that spin up at one time on this particular controller.

Export JBOD (Unconfigured) Disks. Indicates whether unconfigured disks (JBODs) should be exported to the operating system. By default, this setting is disabled and JBOD drives are not exported to the operating system. For more information about this feature, see “Setting the Auto-Rebuild Policy” on page 120.

Disable Write Cache on Unit Degrade. For 9500S controllers, indicates whether write cache will be automatically disabled on a unit if it becomes degraded. After the unit is rebuilt, the write cache will be re-enabled automatically. (This option does not apply to 9550SX and 9590SE controllers; the feature is integrated into the StorSave policy.)

For additional information, see “Viewing and Setting Controller Policies” on page 117.

Scheduling Page

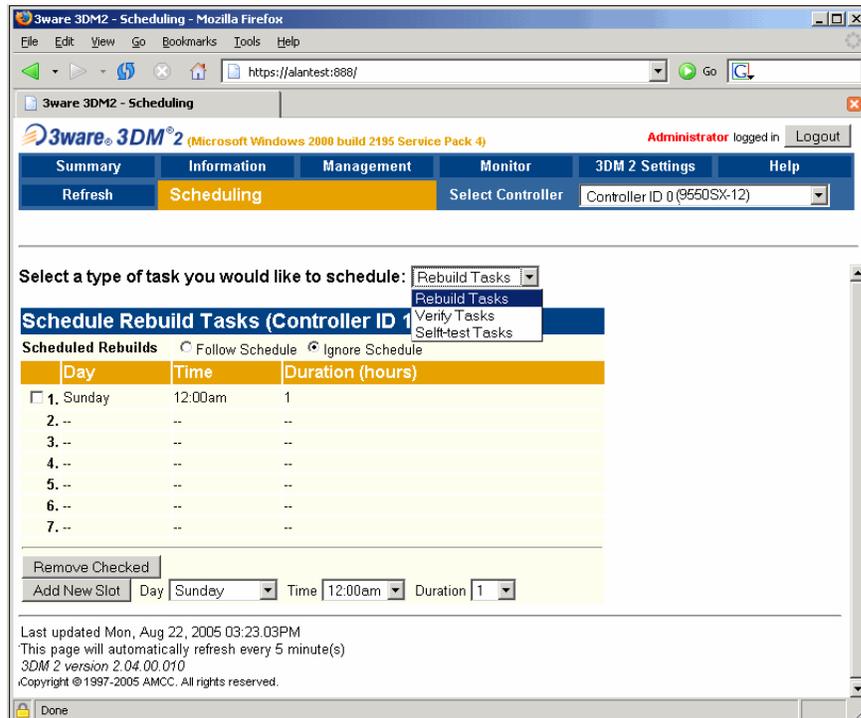


Figure 42. Scheduling Page

For 9000-series controllers, the Scheduling page appears when you choose **Management > Scheduling** from the menu bar.

The Scheduling page is not available for 7000- and 8000- series controllers. If you want to schedule tasks for one of those controllers, use 3DM Version 1.x. You can also use the CLI in conjunction with the operating system schedulers. For detailed information, see the 3ware KnowledgeBase article 12290, on the website at <http://www.3ware.com/kb/>.

The Scheduling page lets you view and change the schedule for background tasks that affect all units on the controller specified in the drop-down list on the menu bar, including:

- Rebuild tasks (also applies to initialization and migration tasks)
- Verify tasks (also applies to media scans)
- Self-tests

You select the type of task for which you want to set the schedule from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

You can also enable or disable use of the schedule for the selected background tasks by selecting either **Follow Schedule** or **Ignore Schedule**. When these

schedules are set to be ignored, these tasks can be performed at any time, and are not restricted to the scheduled times.



Note: Scheduling of these tasks is only available on the 9000-series controllers.

For details about the different background tasks, see “About Background Tasks” on page 177.

About Task Schedules

Each type of task may be scheduled for up to 7 times per week. This limits active initializing, rebuilding, verifying, migrating, and testing of a unit to the times you specify, so that the task does not interfere with peak I/O times.

If all 7 schedule slots are filled, you must first remove one or more schedule times before you can add another.

You may set schedule times whether scheduling is set to be followed or ignored. This is useful if you want to temporarily disable the schedule.

If you remove all the schedule times for a particular background task, initializations, rebuilds, and migrations will run anytime, as they are needed. Verify will only run if started by the CLI, if the Verify Unit button is clicked, or if Auto-Verify is selected for that unit.

For information about adding and removing schedules, and setting schedules to be followed or ignored, see “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184.

About Self-tests

Unlike scheduling of rebuilds and verifies, scheduling of self-tests is always followed. To disable self-tests you either remove all schedule times, or uncheck the tests listed in the Tasks column.



Note: Only the checked tasks will be run during the scheduled times. If none of the tasks are checked, self-tests will never run, even if you have scheduled time slots set.

Two self-tests can be scheduled:

Upgrade UDMA mode. This test checks the speed at which data transfer to drives is occurring, to see if the UDMA mode can be increased. (If you are already running at the fastest UDMA mode, then this self-test has no effect.)

The UDMA mode can become downgraded in the event that cable CRC errors are encountered, requiring multiple retries to read sectors. In severe cases, the UDMA mode may be downgraded from ATA 150 to ATA 133, to ATA 100, to 66, to 33.

This check is also done every time the system is booted.

Check SMART Thresholds. This test checks to see whether SMART thresholds have been exceeded.

The SMART thresholds indicate when a drive is likely to fail, based on the number of errors that have been recorded through SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology).

If any of the disk drives have detected a “threshold exceeded” condition, then an AEN is logged to the 3DM Alarms page. Moreover, if anything unusual is found during any self-test, it will be logged as an Alarm.

Maintenance Page

3ware 3DM² SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4) ADMINISTRATOR logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Maintenance Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)

Rescan Controller (This will scan all ports for newly inserted drives)

Unit Maintenance (Controller ID 0)

Unit	Drives	Configuration	Capacity	Status	Action
Unit 0	4 drives	RAID 10 Primary Unit	298.10 GB	OK	
subunit 0	Port 0	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 0	Port 1	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 1	Port 2	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 1	Port 3	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Unit 4	1 drive	SPARE	149.05 GB	OK	
	Port 4	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	

Verify Unit Rebuild Unit Migrate Unit Remove Unit Delete Unit

*Before removing or deleting a unit, make sure there is no I/O on the unit and unmount it

Available Drives (Controller ID 1)

Port	Model	Capacity	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> Port 5	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
<input type="checkbox"/> Port 6	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
<input type="checkbox"/> Port 7	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]

Select All Drives Create Unit

Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 43. Maintenance Page

The Maintenance page appears when you choose **Management > Maintenance** from the menu bar.

The Maintenance page lets you perform maintenance tasks on existing units on the current controller (shown in the drop-down list on the menu bar), and lets you create new units by configuring available drives.

Information about the Maintenance page is organized under these headings:

- Rescan Controller
- Unit Maintenance
- Maintenance Task Buttons
- Available Drives (to Create Units)

Rescan Controller

Use the **Rescan Controller** button to have 3DM scan the ports. Rescanning updates the list of available drives shown. It also updates the status of all ports, so if error conditions have been fixed, the status is updated to reflect that. This is useful in variety of maintenance tasks. For example, if you physically plug in a drive and want the controller to recognize the newly plugged in drive, use Rescan.



Note: If you unplug a drive without first removing it through 3DM, Rescan will not recognize it as gone unless the drive was in use or until it is required by the system. Always use the **Remove** link to remove a drive before unplugging it. This is required for controllers earlier than the 9550SX models, and recommended for 9550SX and 9590SE models.



Warning: Physically removing or adding drives which are not in hotswap carriers can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

In 9000-series controllers, rescan checks all ports. It checks empty ports for newly plugged in drives. If those drives were previously part of a 3ware RAID configuration and they still have valid DCB (Disk Configuration Block) information on them, the controller tries to piece them back together into a working unit. If a working unit can be formed, it will appear in the Unit Maintenance list when the scan is complete, and the operating system will be notified of the unit. In Linux or FreeBSD, a device node will be associated with each unit created. In Windows, the device manager will reflect the changes under the disk drives icon. This process is known as importing drives.

If new drives do not have any data indicating they were previously part of a 3ware RAID configuration, they will appear in the Available Drives list.

In addition, if there is a unit with the status Inoperable before a rescan (for example, a RAID 5 unit missing 2 or more drives), and a rescan finds drives that complete the unit, the inoperable unit will become a valid unit.



Note: In 8000-series controllers, only JBOD units can be imported. Clicking Rescan Controller after removing units other than a JBOD unit (e.g. RAID 5) will cause the drives that make up the unit to be seen as individual available drives; they will not be pieced together to form a unit. This is unlike the 9000 series controllers, which will piece together the unit for you and display the drives as a unit. If you still want to use the drives together as a unit, restart the computer.. After you restart, the 8000 will again see the drives as a valid unit. Creating a new unit with those drives will destroy any existing data on them.

Unit Maintenance

The Unit Maintenance section of the page lists all existing units on the current controller, and displays summary information about them.

The top row shows information about the unit, while subsequent rows show summary information about each drive in the unit.

Unit Information

Unit Number. The unit number assigned to the unit by the firmware. Unit numbers for 9000 series are in sequential order. Unit numbers for the 7/8000 series will begin with the lowest port number of the unit. Use the checkbox next to the unit to select a unit before clicking one of the task buttons.

Drives. Number of drives in the unit.

Type of Unit. Type of unit: RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50, Single Disk, Spare, or JBOD. If the unit has been given a unique name, it shows beneath the RAID type.

Name of Unit. User-assigned unique name of the unit. The default setting is blank.

Capacity. The usable capacity (size) of the unit.

Status. Operational status of the unit: Ok, Rebuilding, Initializing, Verifying, Migrating, Degraded, or Inoperable (missing drives). When Rebuilding, Initializing, Migrating, or Verifying, the percentage (%) complete is also shown. The percentage complete can be active or paused. To see whether this task is currently active or paused, click on the unit number to display the Unit Information page, which has that information.

Drive Information

Port. The port to which the drive is connected.

Model. The model of the drive.

Capacity. The capacity (size) of the drive.

Status. The status of the drive: OK, Not Supported, Not Present, and so forth. If you need help regarding a status displayed here, please contact Technical Support.

Remove Drive. The **Remove Drive** link removes a drive from the controller so that you can safely unplug it. In the Unit Maintenance section, this link is only provided for drives that can be safely removed without creating an inoperable unit. (For example, a RAID 5 missing 2 or more drives or a RAID 0 missing 1 or more drives would become inoperable.) If you remove a drive from a redundant unit, the unit will become degraded. Once a unit has become degraded, additional drives cannot be removed without making it inoperable, so no **Remove Drive** link will display.



Warning: Physically removing drives which are not in hotswap carriers can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

Maintenance Task Buttons

Below the list of units, a row of task buttons lets you perform maintenance and configuration tasks related to the unit. Before clicking one of these buttons, select the appropriate unit.

Verify Unit. Puts the selected unit in verifying mode. If verify scheduling is enabled on the Scheduling page, the unit will not start actively verifying until the scheduled time, and the status will indicate “Verify-Paused.” (The Unit Details page will indicate whether a unit is actively verifying.) If verify scheduling is not enabled, clicking **Verify Unit** begins the verification process.

If the unit you selected to verify is a redundant unit, the redundancy of the unit will be verified. For example it will check parity for a RAID 5 or check data consistency for a RAID 1. If the unit you checked is not a redundant unit, verify will do a surface scan of the media. During verification, I/O continues normally. For RAID 0, single disks, JBODs, and spares, there is only a slight performance loss. For redundant units, you can set the background task rate on the Controller Settings page to specify whether more processing time should be given to verifying or to I/O.

While a unit is verifying, the status changes to Verifying and a **Stop Verify** link appears in the right-most column of the Unit Maintenance table.



Note: If the unit has not previously been initialized and you click **Verify Unit**, the initialization process starts. Initialization cannot be halted, so no Stop Verify link appears. (Initialization can be paused, however, through Scheduling. Initialization follows the Rebuild schedule, so turning on scheduling for Rebuild will pause initialization, as well.) For more information about initialization, see “About Initialization” on page 177.

Rebuild Unit. Replaces a degraded drive in a degraded unit with an available drive and begins rebuilding the RAID. When you select a degraded unit and click **Rebuild Unit**, a dialog box listing available drives appears, so that you can select the drive you want to use. If the degraded unit has more than one degraded drive (for example, a RAID 10 where both mirrored pairs each have a degraded drive), you will repeat this process a second time.

If rebuild scheduling is enabled on the Scheduling page, the unit will not start actively rebuilding until the scheduled time, and the status will change to say “Rebuild-Paused.” (The Unit Details page indicates whether a unit is actively rebuilding.) If rebuild scheduling is not enabled, the rebuild process will begin right away.

For more information about rebuilds, see “About Rebuilds” on page 180.

Migrate Unit. Reconfigures a unit while it is on-line. Migration can be used to change only the RAID level, to expand the capacity by adding additional drives, or to change the stripe size.



Caution: Once migration of a unit is started, it cannot be cancelled.

When you select a unit and click **Migrate Unit**, a dialog box appears which lists the drives in the unit and any additional available drives. In the dialog box are two drop-down menus, one for choosing the RAID level and one for choosing stripe size.

Unit to Migrate				
Unit 0	3 drives	RAID 5	298.00 GB	OK
Select drive(s) to use to migrate				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3	ST3160023AS	149.05 GB	OK
Type	RAID 5	Stripe	64KB	
OK Cancel				

You can only migrate a unit to a RAID level that will be larger than the original unit. For example, you can migrate from a RAID 5 array with 4 drives to a RAID 0 with four drives but you cannot migrate from a RAID 5 with four drives to a RAID 10 with four drives.

After you have specified changes to the unit, the Unit Maintenance screen reflects your changes and shows the percentage of migration completed.

While the unit is migrating, you can still access the unit as normal but the performance will be lower. You can adjust the I/O rate with the radio buttons on the Controller Settings page.

For more information, see “About Migration” on page 182.

Remove Unit. Removes a selected unit and allows you to unplug the drives and move the unit to another controller. The data on the unit remain intact.



Caution: Before you click **Remove Unit**, make sure the unit you are removing is unmounted and no I/Os are being issued. (For example, make sure you are not copying files to the unit, and make sure that there are no applications with open files on that unit.)

If a unit is not unmounted and you remove it, it is the equivalent of physically yanking a hard drive out from under the operating system. Resulting behavior depends on which operating system you are using and what kind of I/O is being done, however you will typically see really bad results, bad errors, and most likely a reset of the controller or a system hang.

To unmount a unit under windows, use Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Disk Management. In the Computer Management window, right-click on the partition and Remove the logical drive letter associated with the unit.

To unmount a unit under Linux, unmount the mount point to where the RAID unit is mounted. For example, if you want to remove unit 0 and you know that 0 corresponds to /dev/sdb, you should unmount all partitions for sdbx (where x is the number of the partition).

```
umount /dev/sdbx
```

For FreeBSD, the command would be

```
umount /dev/twedx
```

When you click **Remove Unit**, you will be asked to confirm that you want to proceed. When you confirm the removal, the unit number and information will be removed from 3DM. (Units created in the future can reclaim this unit number.)

The operating system is notified that the unit was removed. In Linux the device node associated with this unit is removed. In Windows the Device Manager will reflect the changes under the disk drives icon.

Information about the unit remains intact on the drives. This allows the drive or drives to be reassembled into a unit again on this controller, or if moved to another controller.



Warning: Physically removing drives which are not in hotswap carriers can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

Delete Unit. Deletes the selected unit and allows you to use the drives to create another unit. The drives appear in the list of Available Drives.



Caution: Before you click **Delete Unit**, make sure the unit you are removing is unmounted and no I/Os are being issued. If a unit is not unmounted and you delete it, it is the equivalent of physically yanking a hard drive out from under the operating system. Resulting behavior depends on which operating system you are using and what kind of I/O is being done, however you will typically see really bad results, bad errors, and most likely a reset of the controller or a system hang.

Devices can be unmounted through the operating system. For details, see the discussion under **Remove Unit**, above.



Warning: When a unit is deleted, the data will be permanently deleted: the drives cannot be reassembled into the same unit. If you want to reassemble the drives on another controller and access the existing data, use **Remove Unit** instead of **Delete Unit**.

After deletion, the operating system is notified that the unit was deleted. In Linux the device node associated with this unit is removed. In Windows the Device Manager will reflect the changes under the disk drives icon.

Available Drives (to Create Units)

This section lists the drives on the controller which are not currently configured as part of a unit. The Port number, model, capacity, and status are all displayed, as they are for drives in existing units.

Remove Drive. The Remove Drive link removes a drive from the controller so that you can safely unplug it. Any drive in the Available Drives list can be removed.



Warning: Physically removing drives which are not in hotswap carriers can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

Create Unit

Use the **Create Unit** button to create a unit for use on the current controller. Begin by selecting the drives you want to use in the list of Available Drives, and then click **Create Unit**. You will be prompted to select the unit Type, Name, Stripe size (if applicable), and unit policy settings.

A window like the one in Figure 44 shows the drives you selected, and lets you specify configuration settings.

Selected drive(s) to use to create			
Port 5	WDC WD360GD-00FNA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 6	HDS722525VLSA80	149.05 GB	OK
Port 7	WDC WD360GD-00FNA0	149.05 GB	OK

Type: RAID 5 Name: Stripe: 64kB

Write Cache Auto Verify Continue on Source Error during Rebuild

StorSave: Protection

OK Cancel

Figure 44. Configuring a Unit in 3DM

For more detailed instructions, see “Configuring a New Unit” on page 128.

Type. The drop-down list lists the possible RAID configurations for the drives selected in the list of Available Drives. Available configurations may include RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50, Single Disk, and Spare Disk. For information about these configurations, see “Available RAID Configurations” on page 6.

When you are configuring a RAID 50 with twelve drives, an additional field appears, in which you select the number of drives per subunit—3, 4, or 6.

Selected drives to create			
Port 0	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 1	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 2	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 3	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 4	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 5	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 6	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 7	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 8	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 9	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 10	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK
Port 11	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK

Type: RAID 50 Name: Stripe: 64kB Drives per subunit: 3

Write Cache Auto Verify Continue on Source Error during Rebuild

StorSave: Protection

OK Cancel

Figure 45. Configuring a RAID 50 with 12 Drives

Name. You can enter a name for the unit.

Stripe. The drop-down list of stripe sizes lists the possible stripe sizes for the configuration you selected in the RAID level drop-down.

The default stripe size of 64KB will give the best performance with applications that have many sequential reads and writes. A larger stripe size will give better performance with applications that have a lot of random reads and writes. In general, the smaller the stripe size, the better the sequential I/O

and the worse the random I/O. The larger the stripe size, the worse the sequential I/O and the better the random I/O.

Write Cache, Auto-Verify, and Continue on Source Error during Rebuild.

These check boxes let you set the policies for the unit. These policies can also be set and changed on the Controller Settings page. For details about these policies, see “Unit Policies” on page 94.



Note: If the configuration window disappears while you are selecting drives, 3DM 2 may have refreshed. Click **Create Unit** again. If desired, you can reduce the frequency with which information refreshes in 3DM 2, or disable refresh temporarily, on the 3DM 2 Settings page.

StorSave. This drop-down lets you specify the StorSave Profile to be used for the unit. Three profiles are available: Protection, Balanced, and Performance. For additional information, see “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149.

Alarms Page

The screenshot shows the 3ware 3DM 2 Alarms page. The browser title is "3ware 3DM 2 - Alarms - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The address bar shows "https://localhost:888". The page header includes "3ware 3DM 2 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4)" and "ADMINISTRATOR logged in" with a "Logout" link. The navigation menu has "Summary", "Information", "Management", "Monitor", "3DM 2 Settings", and "Help". The "Alarms" tab is selected, and a "Refresh" button is visible. Below the menu is a "Clear Alarms" button and a legend for "INFO" (blue), "WARNING" (yellow), and "ERROR" (red). The main content is a table of alarm messages:

Sev	Time	Message
INFO	Mon, Jan 19, 2004 01:12:54AM	(0x04:0x002B): Background verify done: unit=0
INFO	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 11:57:02PM	(0x04:0x0029): Background verify started: unit=0
INFO	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 01:16:35AM	(0x04:0x002B): Background verify done: unit=0
INFO	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 12:00:46AM	(0x04:0x0029): Background verify started: unit=0
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 04:38:54AM	(0x04:0x0007): Background initialize done: unit=0
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:38:31AM	(0x04:0x000C): Background initialize started: unit=0
WARNING	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:37:58AM	(0x04:0x002F): Verify failed because array was never initialized: RAID5 subunit=0
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:37:58AM	(0x04:0x0007): Background initialize done: unit=2
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:04:34AM	(0x04:0x000C): Background initialize started: unit=2
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:00:59AM	(0x04:0x003C): Background initialize paused: unit=2
INFO	Sat, Jan 17, 2004 12:00:24AM	(0x04:0x000C): Background initialize started: unit=2
INFO	Fri, Jan 16, 2004 02:22:47PM	(0x04:0x003C): Background initialize paused: unit=2
INFO	Fri, Jan 16, 2004 01:56:45PM	(0x04:0x000C): Background initialize started: unit=2
WARNING	Fri, Jan 16, 2004 01:56:43PM	(0x04:0x002F): Verify failed because array was never initialized: RAID1 subunit=0

At the bottom of the page, it states: "Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:54PM", "This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)", "3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010", and "Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved."

Figure 46. Alarms Page

The Alarms page appears when you click **Monitor > Alarms** on the menu bar.

This page displays a list of AENs (asynchronous event notifications) received from the controller displayed in the drop-down list in the menu bar.

Up to 1000 alarms can be listed. After the 1000-limit is reached, the oldest alarms are deleted, as new ones occur.

You can sort the alarms by severity or time. To do so, just click the column header.

For 7000 and 8000-series controllers, alarms can be used by either 3DM or CLI, but not both. Whichever issues an alarms command first determines which can see alarm data.

For more information about any of the alarms that appear on the Alarms page, see “AEN Messages” on page 224.

Clear Alarms. The **Clear Alarms** button removes all alarms shown in the list.

Sev. Shows the severity of the event. Three levels are provided:

- Errors are shown next to a red box
- Warnings are shown next to a yellow box
- Information is shown next to a blue box

Time. The time shown for alarms generated by 7000- and 8000- series controllers is the time retrieved from the driver by 3DM. The time shown for alarms generated by 9000-series controllers is the time received by the driver from firmware.

Message. The specific text relating to the alarm condition.

Battery Backup Page

Battery Backup Information (Controller ID 0)	
Battery Backup Unit	PRESENT
Firmware	BBU: 1.01.01.000
Serial #	M21900A5390019
BBU Ready	Ready
BBU Status	OK
Battery Voltage	OK
Battery Temperature	OK
Estimated Backup Capacity	0 hours
Last Capacity Test	XX-XXX-XXXX [Test Battery Capacity]
Battery Installation Date	26-Oct-2005

Last updated Fri, Oct 28, 2005 08:35:32PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.011
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 47. Battery Backup Page

The Battery Backup page appears when you choose **Monitor > Battery Backup** on the menu bar. Use this page to determine whether a backup battery is present, see details about it, and perform a battery test.

Battery Backup Unit. Indicates whether the BBU is present.

Firmware. Indicates the BBU firmware version.

Serial Number. Indicates the BBU serial number.

BBU Ready. Indicates if the BBU is able to backup the 3ware RAID controller or not. If the BBU is “Ready”, write cache can be enabled on the 3ware RAID controller. When the status is not “Ready,” write caching is automatically disabled on all units attached to the controller.

BBU Status. Indicates the status of the BBU. Possibly BBU statuses include the following:

- **OK.** The BBU is functioning normally.
- **Not Present.** The BBU was not detected or is disabled. (The BBU can be disabled using CLI.)
- **No Battery.** No battery pack is installed in the BBU.
- **Testing.** A battery capacity test is in process.
- **Charging.** The battery is being charged. Charging of the battery occurs automatically if the battery voltage falls too low. This normally occurs about once a week to top off the charge level; the process does not change the BBU readiness state.

If the battery is ever discharged through a backup cycle or if the system power is off for more than two weeks, the battery status changes to “Charging” the next time the system is powered on. This indicates the BBU is not able to backup the 3ware RAID controller. When the BBU is in the charging state, write caching is disabled automatically on all units attached to the controller.

- **Fault.** The BBU detected a fault. This occurs if the voltage or temperature is outside the acceptable range.
- **Error.** Other BBU error. Please contact AMCC Technical Support.
- **Weak Battery.** The battery should be replaced soon. The results of a battery health test or capacity test indicate that the battery is below the warning threshold (48 hours).
- **Failed Battery.** The battery failed a test and must be replaced. A “Failed Battery” status is displayed if the battery failed the health test or the battery capacity is below the error threshold (24 hours). The battery must be replaced.

Battery Voltage. Indicates the voltage status of the battery. The BBU measures and evaluates the battery voltage continuously. If the voltage falls outside the normal range, warning or error level AENs are generated. In the case of a voltage error the BBU status will change to “Fault” and the battery will be disconnected electronically.

Battery Temperature. Indicates the temperature status of the battery. The BBU measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature continuously. If the temperature falls outside the normal range, warning or error level AENs are generated based on the measured temperature. In the case of a temperature error, the BBU status will change to “Fault” and the battery will be disconnected electronically.

Estimated Backup Capacity. Indicates the estimated backup capacity in hours. This is the amount of time that the battery backup unit can protect the data in the 3ware RAID controller's cache memory. This field is set to zero at

the start of a new test and is updated after the test completes. A capacity of zero will also show if the BBU is disconnected and then reconnected.

Under optimal conditions, a battery can protect for up to 72 hours. However, with a fresh battery, you may see a higher number in this field. As the battery ages, the backup capacity diminishes.

Last Capacity Test. Indicates the date when the last battery test was completed. To test the battery click the **Test Battery Capacity** link. For details, see “Testing Battery Capacity” on page 219.

Battery Installation Date. Indicates when the BBU last detected the battery pack was removed and replaced.

3DM 2 Settings Page

3ware 3DM 2 AUTHORIZ.18YA15 (Windows 2000 Service Pack 4) Administrator logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh 3DM 2 Settings

E-mail notification

Send E-mail Enabled Disabled

Notify on INFO

Sender None

Recipient(s) None

Mail Server(name or IP) None

Save E-mail Settings

Send Test Message

Password

Change Password For User

Current Password

New Password

Confirm New Password

Change Password

Page Refresh

Minutes Between Refresh 5

Remote Access

Allow Remote Access Enabled Disabled

HTTP Settings

Listening Port 888

Change Port

Last updated Tue, Aug 23, 2005 12:18:52PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.009
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 48. 3DM 2 Settings Page

The 3DM 2 Settings page appears when you click **3DM 2 Settings** on the menu bar. Use this page to set preferences, including email notification for

alarms, passwords, page refresh frequency, whether remote access is permitted, and the incoming port for 3DM to listen for requests.

The initial settings for most of these preferences are specified during installation of 3DM.

E-mail Notification

Use the fields in this section to set up and manage notifications of events by e-mail.

Send E-mail. This field determines whether e-mail notification is **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

Notify On. Specifies the type of events for which notifications should be sent. A severity of **Information** will send e-mails for all alarms, a severity of **Warning** will send e-mail for alarms with severity of Warning and Error. A severity of **Error** will send e-mail for alarms with severity of Error.

Sender. Enter the email address which will appear in the “From” field.

Recipient. The e-mail address to which notifications should be sent. You can enter multiple addresses, separated by commas (,).

Mail Server (name or IP). If the machine on which you are running 3DM has access to a name server, you may enter the machine name of the mail server in the Server field. Otherwise, use the IP address.

Save E-mail Settings button. Saves the e-mail notification settings.

Send Test Message button. Sends a test message using the saved e-mail settings.

Password

Use the fields in this section to set the passwords for the User and Administrator. When 3DM is first installed, the default password for both is `3ware`.

Change Password For. Select the access level for which you are setting the password: **User** or **Administrator**. Users can only view status information in 3DM, while Administrators can make changes and administer the controller and associated drives.

Current Password. Enter the current password.

New Password. Enter the new password.

Confirm New Password. Enter the new password a second time, to be sure you have entered it correctly.

Change Password button. Saves password changes.

Page Refresh

Minutes Between Refresh. Displays how frequently pages in 3DM will be refreshed with new data from the controller. To change this setting, select another option from the drop-down. If you prefer 3DM to only refresh when you click **Refresh Page**, select **Never**.

The Login, Help and Drive SMART data pages do not automatically refresh. All other 3DM pages do.

Remote Access

Allow Remote Access. This field enables or disables the ability for users and administrators to access 3DM from a remote computer.

HTTP Settings

Listening Port. This field specifies the HTTP: port to be used by 3DM when listening for communications. The default port setting is 888.

If you change this port, make sure the port you specify is not being used. Failure to do so will cause 3DM to stop responding and you will have to restart it by hand.

Change Port button. Saves a new port number.

Configuring Your Controller

This section describes how to view details about the controller, check its status, and change configuration settings that affect the controller and all of the drives connected to it. It is organized into the following sections:

- Viewing Information About Individual Controllers
- Viewing and Setting Controller Policies



Note: Background task rate is also set for all units on a controller. For information about setting the task rate, see “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183.

Viewing Information About Individual Controllers

If you have more than one controller in your system, you can easily view information about each one using 3DM, in the same session. If you are working at the BIOS level, you access 3BM for each controller separately.

You can check the controller model, serial number, firmware and driver versions, and the status of the controller.

The following steps tell you how to display information about the controller you want to work with.

To see details about a particular controller in 3DM

- 1 Start 3DM and log in.

The 3DM Controller Summary page appears, listing all the 3ware controllers installed in your system.

The right-most column of the list shows the status of each controller.

Tip: If you are managing controllers remotely, the list of controllers is for the machine with the IP or URL you entered in the browser address bar.

For more information about this page, see “Controller Summary Page” on page 84.

- 2 To see details about a particular controller, click the ID link for that controller.

The Controller Details page appears.

For more information about this page, see “Controller Details Page” on page 86.

To see information about a different controller in the 3DM pages

If you have more than one controller in the system, you can switch between them by selecting the one you want to see details about from the **Select Controller** drop-down list at the right of the menu bar.

This drop-down is available on all pages that provide controller-specific features.

When you select a different controller from this list, the page in view changes, to reflect the details for the controller you selected.



Note: Throughout this documentation, the term *current controller* is used to refer to the controller currently selected in this drop-down list.

To see information about a controller in 3BM (BIOS)

- 1 Power up or reboot your system.
- 2 While the system is starting, watch for a screen showing information about the controller and units you want to work with.

When you have more than one controller installed, information about each one will be shown, sequentially.

- 3 Press **Alt-3** to bring up the **3ware BIOS Manager (3BM)**.



Note: If you accidentally bypass display of the controller you want to work with, press **Ctrl-Alt-Del** to restart your computer and try again

- 4 **Tab** to **Information** and press **Enter**.
- 5 On the pop-up menu, select **Controller** and press **Enter**.

The Controller Information page displays.

Viewing and Setting Controller Policies

The following controller-wide policies can be adjusted as appropriate for your equipment.

- **Auto-Rebuild.** Determines whether the Auto-Rebuild policy is enabled or disabled. When disabled, degraded units can only be rebuilt with designated spares. When enabled, the controller firmware will attempt to rebuild a degraded unit if there is no spare, using either an available drive or a failed drive. Applies only to 9550SX and 9590SE controllers.
- **Auto-Carving.** Determines whether the auto-carving policy is enabled or disabled. When it is enabled, any unit larger than a specified size (known as the *carve size*) is created as multiple volumes that can be addressed by the operating system as separate volumes. The default carve size is 2 TB.

This auto-carving feature is sometimes referred to as multi-LUN, where each volume that is created is referred to as a “LUN.”

- **Carve Size.** (Referred to as *Carving Factor* in 3BM) Sets a size for dividing up units into volumes when Auto-Carving is enabled. This setting can be between 1024 and 2048 GB.
- **Staggered spin-up.** Spin-up allows drives to be powered-up into the Standby power management state to minimize in-rush current at power-up and to allow the controller to sequence the spin-up of drives. Compatible drives are sent a spin up command as defined by the **Number of drives per spin-up** and **Delay between spin-up settings**. These policies can only be set in 3BM and CLI.
 - **Number of drives per spin-up.** Number of drives that will spin up at the same time when the controller is powered up, if staggered spin-up is enabled. From 1 to x, depending on the number of ports on the controller.
 - **Delay between spin-up.** The delay time (in seconds) between drive groups that spin up at one time on this particular controller, if staggered spin-up is enabled.
- **Export JBOD (unconfigured) disks.** This setting indicates whether JBOD disks should be exported to the operating system. JBOD configuration is strongly discouraged for newly added disks on the 9000 series controller, in favor of Single Disk, so by default, this setting is disabled. If you have a JBOD configuration from a 7000/8000 controller that you want to use on the 9000 controller, you should enable this setting. This policy can only be set in 3BM and CLI.
- **Disable write cache on degraded array.** For 9500S controllers, indicates whether write cache will be automatically disabled on a unit if it becomes degraded. (This option does not apply to 9550SX and 9590SE controllers; the feature is integrated into the StorSave policy.)

When **Yes**, the unit write cache and the disk drive write cache will be disabled if the unit degrades. This setting has no effect on non-redundant arrays. Write cache will be automatically re-enabled when the unit returns to normal.

When **No**, the unit and disk drive write cache will remain enabled (if it is enabled), in the event that the unit degrades.

This policy can only be set in 3BM and CLI.

- **Staggered method.** Indicates whether the type of staggered spin-up is ATA-6 or SATA OOB (Out Of Band). By default, when Staggered Spin-up is enabled, the ATA-6 scheme is used. If your drives support the SATA OOB method, select that method in 3BM. There is no electronic method for the controller to know if a drive supports this method, so it must be set manually. For staggering to work properly, the drives must support the selected method. This policy can only be set and only shows in 3BM.

Some additional policies can be set at the unit level. For more information, see Chapter 8, “Configuring Units.”

Viewing Controller Policies

You can view the current state of controller policies in 3DM, in the **Other Controller Settings** section at the bottom of the Controller Settings Page, as shown in Figure 49. However, only the Auto-Rebuild, Auto-Carving, and Carve Size policies can be changed on this page. The other policies can be changed in 3BM or through the CLI. For a summary of the initial default settings, see Table 5, “Initial Default Settings for Policies,” on page 17.

To view controller policies in 3DM

- Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar.

The screenshot shows the 3DM Controller Settings page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs for Summary, Information, Management, Monitor, 3DM 2 Settings, and Help. The '3DM 2 Settings' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there is a 'Refresh' button and a 'Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)' dropdown menu. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Background Task Rate (Controller ID 0):** Contains 'Rebuild/Migrate Rate' and 'Verify Rate', each with radio buttons for 'Faster Rebuild' and 'Faster I/O'.
- Unit Policies (Controller ID 0):** A table with columns for 'Write Cache', 'Auto Verify', 'Continue on Source Error during Rebuild', 'Queuing', and 'StorSave'. The 'Unit 0 [RAID 5]' row shows 'Write Cache' checked, 'Auto Verify' unchecked, 'Continue on Source Error during Rebuild' unchecked, 'Queuing' checked, and 'StorSave' set to 'Performance'.
- Unit Names (Controller ID 0):** A text input field for 'Unit 0 [RAID 5]' containing 'PrimaryRAID5', with 'Save Names' and 'Reset Names' buttons below it.
- Other Controller Settings (Controller ID 0):** Contains 'Auto Rebuild' and 'Auto Carving' (radio buttons for Enabled/Disabled), 'Carve Size' (text input '1024' with a 'Submit' button), 'Number of Drives per Spin-up' (value '1'), 'Delay between Spin-up' (value '2 second(s)'), and 'Export Unconfigured Disk' (value 'No').

At the bottom, it says 'Last updated Thu, Mar 09, 2006 12:42:38PM' and 'This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)'.

Figure 49. 3DM Controller Settings Page

To view controller policies in 3BM

You can also view and change these controller policies in 3BM, as shown in Figure 50.

- On the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Settings** and press **Enter**.
- On the pop-up menu, select **Controller Policies** and press **Enter**.

The Policy Control screen displays.

The screenshot shows the 'Policy Control' screen. It has a blue background with white text. At the top, it says 'Policy Control'. Below that, there is a message: 'Via the options below, you can set various policies that the controller board will use when processing arrays and disks. (These settings apply to the currently selected board only and will persist through power cycles.)'. A red warning message follows: '<Changing JBOD policy will cause all recent configuration changes to be lost.>'. The main content is a list of settings:

- Export JBOD Disks: No
- Staggered Spinup: Enabled
- Number of Drives Per Spinup: 1
- Delay Between Spinups: 2 seconds
- Disable Cache on Degraded Array: N/A
- Staggered Method: ATA-6
- Auto-Carving: Enabled
- Carving Factor: 1024
- Auto-Rebuild: Enabled

There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons on the right side. At the bottom, there is a yellow bar with the text 'Change whether JBODs are exported' and a footer with navigation instructions: 'Alt-F1 Help', 'F+ Previous/Next', 'Enter Change Value', and 'Esc Cancel'.

Figure 50. 3BM Policy Control Screen

Setting the Auto-Rebuild Policy

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the Auto-Rebuild policy determines how the controller firmware will attempt to rebuild degraded units.

When Auto-Rebuild is disabled, only spares will be automatically used to rebuild degraded units. When Auto-Rebuild is enabled, the firmware will select drives to use for automatically rebuilding a degraded unit using the following priority order.

- Smallest usable spare.
- Smallest usable unconfigured (available) drive.
- Smallest usable failed drive.

Enabling Auto-Rebuild allows you to add a drive to the controller and have it be available for a rebuild, without having to specify it as a spare. (For 9500S controllers, you need to tell the controller to Rescan before the controller will see the drive.)

With Auto-Rebuild enabled, if you accidentally disconnect a drive (causing the controller to see it as a failed drive) and then reconnect it, the controller will automatically try to use it again.

You can enable or disable the Auto-Rebuild policy through 3DM, 3BM, or the CLI. For how to change this setting through CLI, see *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

To enable Auto-Rebuild through 3BM

- 1 On the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Settings** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the pop-up menu, select **Controller Policies** and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the Policy Settings page, **Tab** to the **Auto-Rebuild** field, press **Enter** to display the options, select **Enable** and press **Enter** again to select it.
- 4 **Tab** to **OK** and press **Enter** to select it.
The policy is enabled immediately.

To enable Auto-Rebuild through 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the Other Controller Settings section at the bottom of the screen, select the **Enabled** option for **Auto-Rebuild**.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support

When the Auto-Carving policy is on, any unit larger than a specified size (known as the *carve size*) is created as multiple volumes that can be addressed by the operating system as separate volumes. These chunks are sometimes known as multiple LUNs (logical units). However, throughout the 3ware documentation, they are referred to as *volumes*.

For example, using the default carve size of 2 TB, if the unit is 2.5 TB then it will contain two volumes, with the first volume containing 2TB and the second volume containing 0.5 TB. If the unit is 5.0 TB then it will contain 3 volumes, with the first two volumes containing 2 TB each and the last volume containing 1 TB. (**Note:** If a specific Boot Volume was also specified in 3BM, the first volume will be the size specified for the Boot Volume, and then the carve size will be applied to the remainder of the unit. For more information, see “Boot volume size” on page 130.)

Each volume can be treated as an individual disk with its own file system. The default carve size is 2 TB; you can change this to a setting in the range of 1 TB to 2 TB (1024 MB to 2048 MB). 3ware firmware supports a maximum of 8 volumes per controller, up to a total of 16 TB.

If you are migrating a unit to a size that is larger than the carve size and auto-carving is on, multiple volumes will be created.



Note: Using auto-carving can have an impact on performance.

The main use of auto-carving is to gain use of the full capacity in units greater than 2 TB. This is because Windows 2000, Windows 2003, Windows XP, and FreeBSD 4.x, do not currently recognize unit capacity in excess of 2 TB.



Note: Operating systems without this limitation include Linux 2.6, FreeBSD 5.x, Windows XP-64bit, and Windows 2003, SP 1.

Even though the Linux 2.6 kernel supports partitions larger than 2 TB, the installers for SuSE and Redhat do not. Turn auto-carving on to prevent the installation from failing.

You must turn on the Auto-Carving policy before creating the unit. Units created with this policy turned off will not be affected by a change to the policy. If the policy is turned off later, units that have been carved into volumes will retain their individual volumes; existing data is not affected.

To use auto-carving

- 1 Enable the auto-carving feature. You can do so using 3DM, 3BM, or the 3ware CLI.

In 3DM, enable Auto-Carving at the bottom of the **Management > Controller Settings** page.

In 3BM, you enable Auto-Carving on the **Settings > Controller Policies** page.

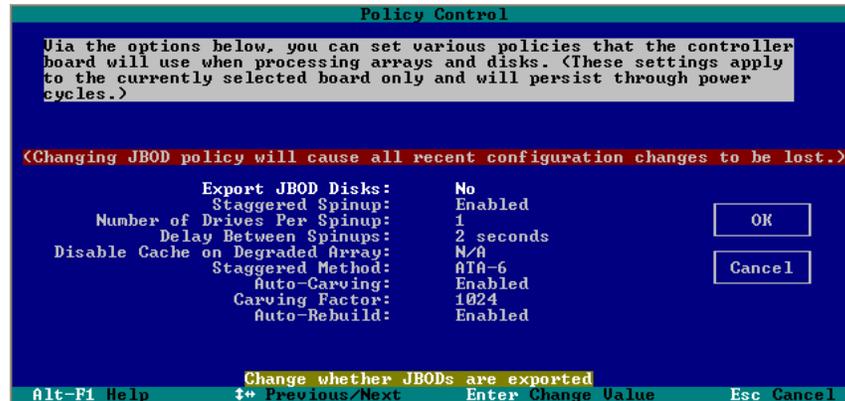


Figure 51. Auto-Carve policy in 3BM

In CLI, use the command `tw_cli /cx set autocarve=on`. For more information, see the *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

- 2 Create a new unit or migrate an existing unit to include the drives you want to use.

With auto-carving enabled, if the combined capacity of the drives exceeds the carve size, a number of volumes will be created. When the carve size is the default of 2 TB, up to 8 individual 2 TB volumes will be created from the unit.

For example, a 5 TB unit would become 3 volumes; two 2 TB volumes and one 1 TB volume. (After creating as many volumes as possible of the specified carve size, any remainder will create a final volume.)

- 3 Verify the creation of the volumes through 3DM 2 or the CLI.

In 3DM 2, the number of volumes is shown on the Unit Details page.

- 4 Verify that the volumes appear in the operating system. They will appear as additional drives.

**Notes:**

- A. If you are configuring a unit for primary storage and it will be greater than 2 TB, be sure to enable the auto-carve policy before creating the unit.
 - B. When volumes have been created through auto-carving, they cannot be deleted except by deleting the unit.
 - C. If you create a bootable unit that has multiple volumes, the first volume is always used as the boot device.
 - D. Changing the auto-carve policy does not affect existing units.
-

Setting the Size of Volumes Created with Auto-Carving

If you create units over 2 TB in size and use auto-carving to divide them into multiple volumes, you can control the size of the volumes to be created by setting the carve size (referred to as *carving factor* in 3BM) to use. The carve size can be between 1 TB (1024 GB) and 2 TB (2048 GB); the default is 2 TB.

When you change this policy, it applies to units you create in the future. Existing units will not be affected.

To set the carve size in 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the Other Controller Settings section at the bottom of the screen, in the **Carve Size** field, enter the size you want (between 1024 GB and 2048 GB) to use and click **Submit**.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

To set the carve size (carving factor) in 3BM

- 1 On the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Settings** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the pop-up menu, select **Controller Policies** and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the Policy Settings page, **Tab** to the **Carving Factor** field, press **Enter** to display the text entry box, enter the size you want (between 1024 GB and 2048 GB) and press **Enter** again to accept it.

- 4 **Tab** to **OK** and press **Enter** to select it.

The policy is enabled immediately.

To set the carve size in CLI

- Using the 3ware CLI, use the command `/cx set carvesize` to specify the size for volumes

The size can be between 1024 Gb and 2048 Gb

For more information, see the *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Enabling and Setting Up Staggered Spin-up

Three policy settings let you set the number of drives that will spin up at the same time and set the delay between drive groups that spin up at one time.

Not all drives support staggered spinup. If you enable staggered spinup and have drives that do not support it, the setting will be ignored. You can change these setting in 3BM or using the CLI.



Note: Some hard drives require that the power management jumper (PM2) be set to enable staggered spinup, in order for the SATA OOB option to be used. For more information, see the knowledgebase article 14889, at <http://www.3ware.com/KB/article.aspx?id=14889>

To enable or disable spinup and set the delay between spinups

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Policy** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the Policy **Control** screen, **Tab** through these fields, making the choices you want to use:
 - **Number of Drives Per Spinup:** Select the number of drives—from 1 to 4, 8, or 12, depending on the number of ports on the controller.
 - **Delay between spinup:** Select the number of seconds—from 1 to 6.
 - **Staggered Method:** Select **either ATA-6** or **SATA OOB** as the type of staggered spinup you want to use. For staggering to work correctly, the drives must support the selected method. Check the documentation for the drive to see which method is supported.
- 3 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

You will notice a short delay as 3BM makes the policy changes.

Exporting JBOD Disks

By default, JBOD disks (unconfigured disks) connected to the 3ware RAID controller are not exported to the operating system. This means that any drives you leave unconfigured are not seen by the operating system, and cannot be used for storage. When Export JBOD Disks is set to No, you make individual disks available for use by configuring them as Single Disks.

If you want unconfigured disks to be available on your computer, you can change this setting in 3BM or using the CLI.



Note: It is recommended that JBODs not be made available to the operation system. The advantages of working with configured Single Disks over JBOD are:

- If interrupted, a single disk media scan will continue from where it left off, while a JBOD media scan must restart from the beginning.
- Single disks can take advantage of the controller caching and configuration is persistent.
- Single disks will be able to be migrated to redundant units in the future (e.g. A single disk will be able to be mirrored to another drive, creating a RAID 1 array).

If JBOD disks are not exported to the operating system, they will appear as available drives in 3DM, and can be configured as single disks or spares, and included in other RAID configurations. If you change the policy to allow JBOD disks to be exported to the operating system, they will appear as units in 3DM if those drives were previously used as JBODs on another controller. AMCC recommends that new drives be configured as Singles and not JBODs.

To enable or disable the export of unconfigured disks

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Policy** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the **Policy Control** screen, **Tab** to **Export Unconfigured Disks**, press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select **Yes** (to enable), or **No** (to disable) and press **Enter** again to choose it.
- 3 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

You will notice a short delay as 3BM makes the policy changes.



Note: If you enable the Export JBOD Disks option, the controller recognizes and displays as JBODs drives that were previously connected to 7000/8000-series controllers as JBODs. Drives that were previously connected to a 9000-series controller and configured will not be seen as JBODs.

Disabling Write Cache on Unit Degrade



Note: This procedure applies only to 9500S controllers. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, this feature is integrated into the StorSave Profile.

You can choose whether you want the write cache to be automatically disabled when a unit degrades. This enables some higher level recovery, to cover the case where there is a software RAID layer (using some redundancy) on top of the 3ware RAID configuration. In case of a second drive failure, the software RAID layer can still provide redundancy since no data was lost.

When this setting is set to **Yes**, it overrides the write cache setting specified for a particular unit. You can change this setting in 3BM or using the CLI.

For more information about enabling and disabling the write cache, see “Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache” on page 143.

To disable write cache when a unit degrades

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, **Tab** to **Policy** and press **Enter**.
- 2 On the Policy **Control** screen, **Tab** to **Disable Write Cache on Unit Degrade**.
- 3 Press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select **Yes**, and press **Enter** again to select it.
- 4 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

You will notice a short delay as 3BM makes the policy changes.

Configuring Units

A unit is any configured disk or array of disks connected to your 3ware RAID controller.

This section includes instructions for performing the following configuration tasks:

- Configuring a New Unit
- Creating a Hot Spare
- Naming a Unit
- Setting Unit Policies
 - Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache
 - Setting Auto-Verify for a Unit
 - Setting Continue on Source Error During Rebuild
 - Enabling and Disabling Queuing for a Unit
 - Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit
- Changing An Existing Configuration (RAID Level Migration or Online Capacity Expansion)
- Deleting a Unit
- Removing a Unit
- Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another
- Adding a Drive through 3DM
- Removing a Drive
- Rescanning the Controller

Configuring a New Unit

When you configure a new unit, you specify some details related to the type of RAID configuration you want, and others that enable or disable features.

This section provides an overview of the different settings you can use and then provides step-by-step instructions for creating a unit through both 3DM and 3BM.

Configuration Options When Creating a Unit

This section provides an overview of the choices you have when configuring a new unit. For step-by-step instructions, see “Creating a Unit through 3DM” on page 130.

Whether you create a unit through 3BM or 3DM, when you configure a new unit, you specify the following:

- Drives to be included in the unit
- Type of configuration
- Name of the unit (optional)
- Stripe size, if appropriate for the RAID level
- Unit policies that affect how the unit will be handled
- Boot volume size (optional)

You can make some types of changes to the RAID configuration later, and you can change the unit name and the unit policies. For details, see “Changing An Existing Configuration” on page 151.



Note: If you will install the operating system on and boot from a unit managed through the new 3ware RAID controller, Chapter 3, “First-Time RAID Configuration Using 3BM,” provides step-by-step instructions.

Drives to be included in the unit

You may include from one to sixteen drives in the unit, depending on the number of drives available and the model of the controller you have. (For information about how many drives to select for a given RAID level, see Table 3, “Possible Configurations Based on # of Drives,” on page 10.)

You may only select available drives that are not currently part of a unit. If you want to use drives that are currently part of a different unit, you must delete that unit, first, to make the drives available. (For details, see “Deleting

a Unit” on page 157.) If drives are listed under “Incomplete Drives and Others,” they must be deleted before they can be used.

If you want to add drives to be used in the unit, see “Adding a Drive through 3DM” on page 168.

Type of configuration

Available configuration types include RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50, and Single Disk. For information about the different RAID levels, see “Understanding RAID Concepts and Levels” on page 5.



Note: Creating a unit erases all data on all drives. Although creating a RAID 1 (mirror) creates a unit that will have a duplicate of data on both drives after it is put in use, creating a RAID 1 cannot be used to make a backup copy of data that currently exists on a single drive unless you migrate from a RAID 1 to two individual single disks.

Name of the unit (optional)

Units can be given names. These names will be visible in 3DM, 3BM, and CLI.

Stripe size, if appropriate for the RAID level

In general, smaller stripe sizes are better for sequential I/O, such as video, and larger stripe sizes are better for random I/O (such as databases).

Striping size is not applicable for RAID 1, because it is a mirrored array without striping.

Using the default stripe size of 64KB usually gives you the best performance for mixed I/Os. If your application has some specific I/O pattern (purely sequential or purely random), you might want to experiment with a smaller or larger stripe size.

Unit policies

Several unit policies are set when you create a new unit:

- Write Cache (enabled, by default)
- Drive Queuing (disabled, by default). Available only for 9550SX and 9590SE controllers.
- Auto-Verify (disabled, by default)
- Continue on Source Error When Rebuild (disabled, by default).

- StorSave Profile (Protection, by default) Available only for 9550SX and 9590SE controllers.

The particular policies that you can adjust when you create the unit vary, depending on which program you are using: 3DM, 3BM, or the CLI.

- In 3DM and using the CLI, you can enable/disable write cache, enable Auto-Verify, and specify whether to continue on source error
- In 3BM, you can specify all policies except Auto-Verify

You can change all of these policies after the unit has been created.

For a summary of what these policies do, see the discussion under “Setting Unit Policies” on page 142. For how to adjust each one, see the procedures later in this chapter.

Boot volume size

When you create a unit through 3BM, you can create a special volume to function as the boot volume. You specify the size you want this volume to be. This is useful if you will be installing an operating system onto the unit, and want it to be installed in one volume and have a separate volume for data.

This is an optional feature. You do not have to create a boot volume if you plan to install the operating system on the unit.

If you are creating a very large unit (2 TB or greater) and have enabled the Auto-Carving policy, the boot volume will be created in addition to any volumes created through auto-carving. For more information about auto-carving, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

This feature is only available on 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, and can only be specified in 3BM.

Creating a Unit through 3DM

In 3DM, configuration starts from the **Maintenance** page (Figure 52), where you can configure a new unit, designate an available drive as a hot spare, delete a unit, and remove units or drives. You can also have 3DM rescan the controller, if you have added drives or units.

For information about working in 3DM, see “3ware Disk Manager (3DM 2)” on page 65.

3ware 3DM - Maintenance - Microsoft Internet Explorer

Address: https://192.168.2.143:888

3ware 3DM[®]2 SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4) ADMINISTRATOR logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Maintenance Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)

Rescan Controller (This will scan all ports for newly inserted drives)

Unit Maintenance (Controller ID 0)

Unit	Drives	Configuration	Capacity	Status	Action
Unit 0	4 drives	RAID 10 Primary Unit	298.10 GB	OK	
subunit 0	Port 0	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 0	Port 1	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 1	Port 2	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
subunit 1	Port 3	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Unit 4	1 drive	SPARE	149.05 GB	OK	
	Port 4	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	

Verify Unit Rebuild Unit Migrate Unit Remove Unit Delete Unit

*Before removing or deleting a unit, make sure there is no I/O on the unit and unmount it

Available Drives (Controller ID 1)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Port 5	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port 6	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port 7	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]

Select All Drives

Create Unit

Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 52. 3DM Maintenance Page

To create a unit

- 1 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 2 In the Available Drives list, select the drives you want to include in the unit by marking the checkbox in front of the Port number for each one.
 If you are creating single drive units (single disks or hot spares), you can configure multiple drives at once.
 (For details about this screen, see “Maintenance Page” on page 100.)
- 3 Click **Create Unit**.
 A window like the one shown here shows the drives you selected, and lets you specify configuration settings.

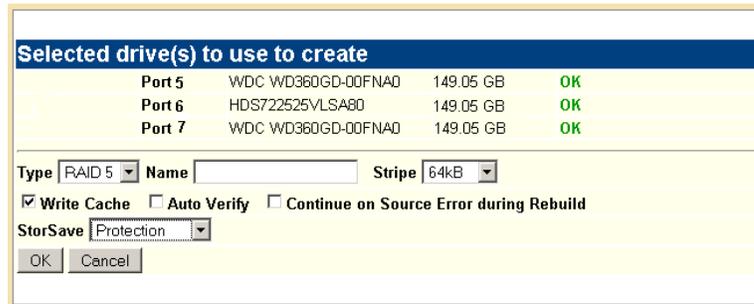


Figure 53. Configuring a Unit in 3DM

- 4 In the window, select the RAID configuration you want.
- 5 If stripe size applies to the RAID type you select, select a Stripe Size.
- 6 Optional: In the Name box, enter a name for the unit (up to 21 characters, including dashes and underscores).
- 7 If you have 12 drives attached to the controller and selected RAID 50 as the configuration in step 3, select whether you want 3, 4, or 6 Drives Per Subunit, as shown here.

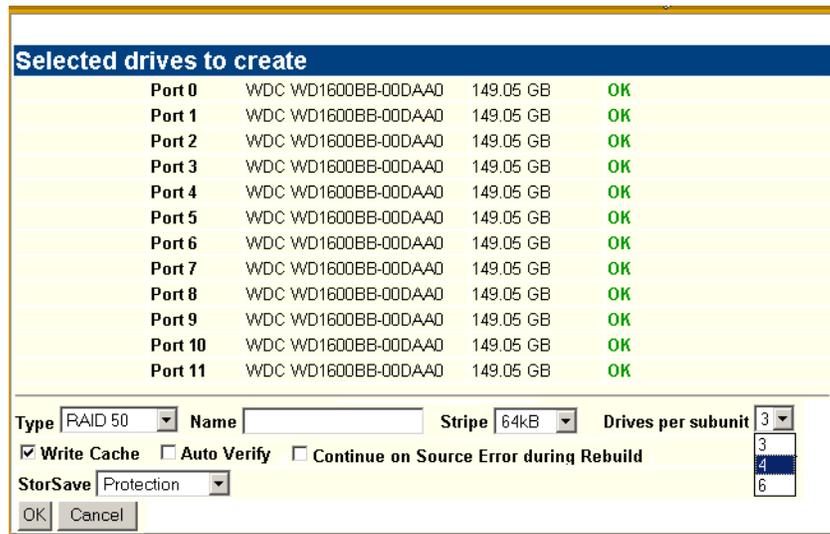


Figure 54. Configuring a RAID 50 with 12 Drives

- 8 Make changes to the unit policies, as desired. You can enable or disable the Write Cache, Auto-Verify, and Continue on Source Error During Rebuild. You can also set the StorSave policy.

For details about these settings, see “Configuration Options When Creating a Unit” on page 128 and “Setting Unit Policies” on page 142.

- 9 Click **OK**.

The new unit will appear in the Unit Maintenance list at the top of the page and the operating system will be notified of the new unit.

In Linux, a device node will now be associated with each unit created. In Windows, the device manager will reflect the changes under the disk drives icon.

- 10 Partition and format the unit. Steps will vary depending on the operating system. For more information, see “Partitioning and Formatting Units” on page 137.
- 11 Mount the new unit.



Note: For RAID 5 units with 5 or more disks, and RAID 50 units with subunits of 6 drives, initialization of the unit begins immediately.
The unit can be used while it is initializing and is fault-tolerant.

- 12 Partition and format the unit. For details, see “Partitioning and Formatting Units” on page 137.

Creating a Unit through 3BM

In 3BM, configuration tasks start from the main 3ware BIOS Manager screen shown in Figure 55. From this screen you can configure new units, delete existing ones, or perform maintenance tasks.

For information about working in 3BM, see “3ware BIOS Manager 2 (3BM 2)” on page 55.

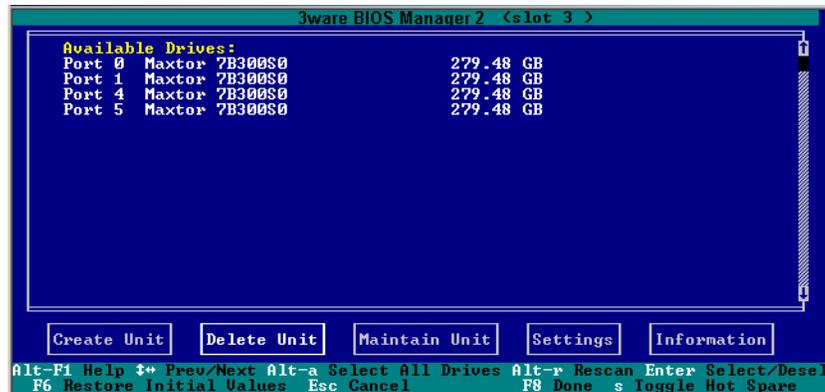


Figure 55. 3BM Main Display

To create a unit through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the drives to be included by highlighting each one and pressing **Enter** or **Space** to select it.

When you select a drive, an asterisk appears next to it in the left most column (see Figure 56).

Tip: If you want to use all available drives, press **Alt-A** to select them all.

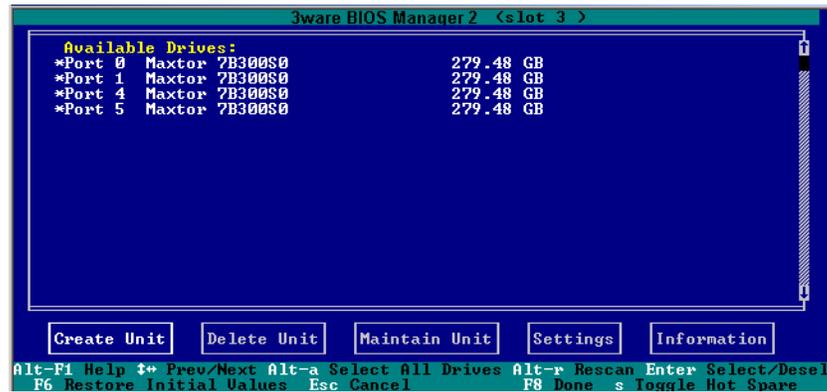


Figure 56. Asterisks Next to Selected Drives

- 2 After all drives for the unit are selected, **Tab** to the **Create Unit** button and press **Enter**.

Tip: You can also press **Alt-C** to choose Create Unit.

- 3 On the **3ware Disk Array** screen, make sure that the proper drives are listed (see Figure 57 for an example for RAID 5).

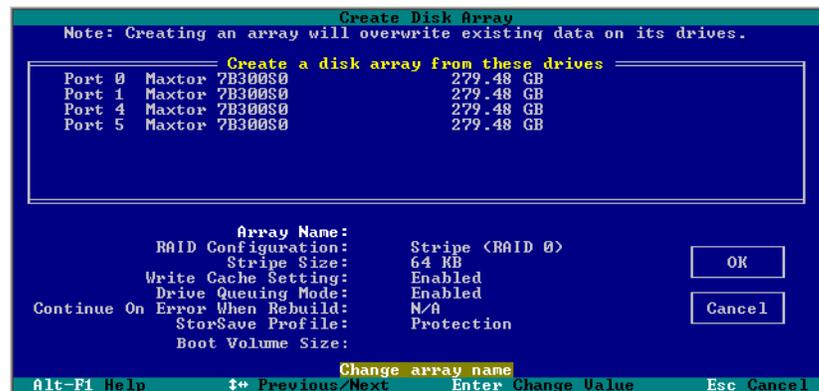


Figure 57. Create Disk Array Display

- 4 (Optional) Press **Enter** and type a name for the unit; then press **Enter** again to set the name.

- 5 **Tab** to the **RAID Configuration** field and press **Enter** to display a list of available configurations for the number of drives you selected.



Figure 58. Configuration Choices for Four Drives

- 6 Use the **arrow keys** to select the configuration you want and press **Enter**.
- 7 **Tab** to the field **Stripe Size** and select the desired striping size (16, 64, or 256 KB).



Figure 59. Stripe Sizes for a RAID 5

- 8 (Optional) **Tab** through the policy fields and make any appropriate changes to the settings for:
 - **Write Cache Setting**
 - **Drive Queuing Mode**
 - **Continue on Error During Rebuild**
 - **StorSave Policy**

For details about these settings, see “Configuration Options When Creating a Unit” on page 128.

- 9 (Optional) **Tab** to the field **Boot Volume Size**, press **Enter** and type the size for the boot volume (volume 0) in gigabytes; then press **Enter** again to set the size.
- 10 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to confirm creation of the unit.
- 11 If the volume summary screen appears, review the information and press any key to continue.

Multiple volumes will be created if you entered a Boot Volume Size of greater than zero (0), or if auto-carving is enabled and the combined size of the drives in your unit is large enough to divide it into multiple volumes.

If you are not satisfied with how the volumes will be split up in the unit, delete the unit from the main 3BM screen and recreate it using a different Boot Volume Size. If desired, you can change the auto-carving policy or the carve size on the Policies page. For more information, see “Using Auto-Carving for Multi LUN Support” on page 121.

You are returned to the main 3BM screen.



Note: The unit is not actually created and no data is overwritten until you have finished making all your changes and press **F8**.

- 12 When you are finished making configuration changes, press **F8** to save the changes and exit 3BM.

A warning message tells you that all existing data on the drives will be deleted, and asks you to confirm that you want to proceed.

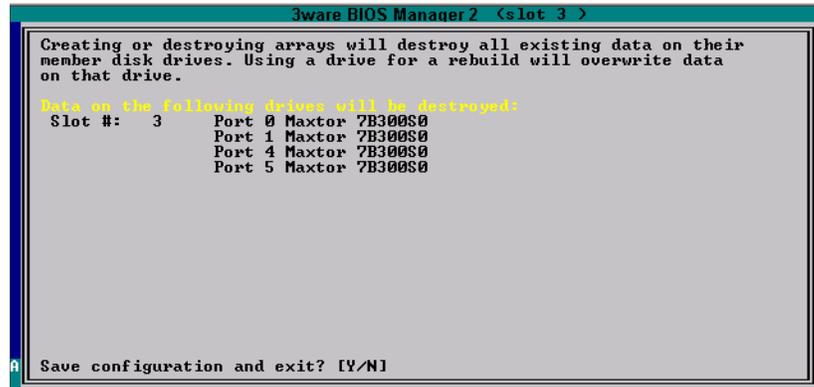


Figure 60. Confirmation Message when Saving and Exiting

If you made changes to units on more than one controller, the details about changes about to be made may extend beyond one screen. In this case, you use the **PgUp** and **PgDn** keys to bring more information into view.

- 13 Type **Y** to continue, delete any existing data on the drives, and create the unit.
- 14 Partition and format the units, as described under “Partitioning and Formatting Units” on page 137.



Note: For RAID 5 units with 5 or more disks, and RAID 50 units with a subunit of 6 disks, initialization of the unit begins immediately. You can postpone initialization if you want to begin using the units right away, however initialization from the BIOS is faster than it is under the operating system, so it will be a longer period of time until the unit has optimal performance. For more information, see “About Initialization” on page 177.

Ordering Units in 3BM

If you configure multiple units in 3BM and you want to install the OS on one of them so that you can boot from that unit, that unit must be the first unit.

You can change the order of the units in 3BM.

To change the order of units in 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, in the list of exportable units, highlight the unit you want to move.
- 2 Press the **Page Up** key to move the unit up the list; press the **Page Down** key to move the unit down the list.

Position the unit you want to be bootable at the top of the list of exportable units.
- 3 When you are finished working in 3BM, press **F8** to save your changes and exit.

Partitioning and Formatting Units

After you create a unit, whether through 3BM or 3DM, it needs to be formatted, partitioned, and mounted before it can be used.

To partition and format under Windows

- 1 Boot the system and log in as a system administrator.
- 2 Partition and format the new arrays or disks using the **Administrative Tools** from the **Start** menu:
 - a Choose **Computer Management** from the **Administrative Tools** menu.
 - b Select **Storage**.
 - c Select **Disk Management**.
- 4 Follow the steps that appear on-screen to write a signature to the drive.
- 5 Right-click on the drive and select **Create Volume**.
- 6 Follow the steps that appear on-screen to create a volume and to assign a drive letter.

To partition and format under Linux

1 Boot the system and log in as root.

2 Open a terminal window.

3 Partition the unit:

```
fdisk /dev/sda
```

If the unit is over 2 TB, use:

```
parted /dev/sda
```

```
(parted) mklabel
New disk label type? gpt
(parted) p
```

```
Disk geometry for /dev/sda: 0kB - 1074GB
Disk label type: gpt
Number Start End Size File system Name Flags
```

```
parted /dev/sda
```

```
(parted) mkpart
```

```
Partition type? [primary]?
File system type? [ext2]?
Start? 0
End? 1074gb
```

```
(parted) p
Disk geometry for /dev/sda: 0kB - 1074GB
Disk label type: gpt
Number Start End Size File system Name Flags1 17kB 1074MB
1074MB
```

4 Create or make the file system:

```
mkfs /dev/sda1
```

Use of the `-j` option to turn on journaling is recommended for large partitions.

For example:

```
mkfs -j /dev/sda
```

If the partition is over 2TB, use `parted` to also make the file system:

```
parted /dev/sda
```

```
(parted) mkfs
Partition number? 1
File system? [ext2]?
writing per-group metadata (begins)...0% to 100% is
displayed)
```

```
(parted) quit (when completed)
```

To partition and format under FreeBSD

- 1 Boot the system and log in as root.
- 2 Open a terminal window.
- 3 Partition the unit:

```
fdisk -BI /dev/da0;  
disklabel /dev/da0 | disklabel -B -R -r da0
```
- 4 Create or make the file system:

```
newfs /dev/da0c
```

You can also use `sysinstall` to format and partition the unit.

Creating a Hot Spare

You can designate an **available drive** as a hot spare. If a redundant unit degrades and a hot spare the size of the degraded disk (or larger) is available, the hot spare will automatically replace the failed drive in the unit without user intervention. When this occurs, an event notification is generated and appears in the list of alarms in 3DM.

It is a good idea to create a hot spare after you create a redundant unit.

In order to replace a failed drive, a hot spare must have the same or larger storage capacity than the drive it is replacing.

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the Auto-Rebuild policy allows automatic rebuilding to occur with drives that are not designated as spares. For more information, see “Setting the Auto-Rebuild Policy” on page 120.



Note: 3ware’s 9000 series RAID controllers use drive coercion so that drives from differing manufacturers and with slightly different capacities are more likely to be able to be used as spares for each other. Drive coercion slightly decreases the usable capacity of a drive that is used in redundant units.

The capacity used for each drive is rounded down to the nearest GB for drives under 45 GB (45,000,000,000), and rounded down to the nearest 5 GBytes for drives over 45 GB. For example, a 44.3 GB drive will be rounded down to 44 GBytes, and a 123 GB drives will be rounded down to 120 GBytes.

If you have 120 GB drives from different manufacturers, chances are that the capacity varies slightly. For example, one drive might be 122 GB, and the other 123 GB, even though both are sold and marketed as “120 GB drives.” 3ware drive coercion uses the same capacity for both of these drives so that one could replace the other.

Specifying a Hot Spare through 3DM

If you need to add a drive to be used as the hot spare, follow the instructions under “Adding a Drive through 3DM” on page 168.

To specify a hot spare after the system is booted

- 1 In the **Available Drives** section of the Maintenance Page, select the drive by checking the box next to it.
- 2 Click **Create Unit**.
- 3 In the dialog box that appears, select the configuration type **Spare**.
- 4 Click **Ok**.

You will see the spare appear at the top of the page, under **Unit Maintenance**.

Specifying a Hot Spare through 3BM

- 1 On the main 3BM screen, in the list of **Available Drives**, highlight the drive you want to use.
- 2 Type **s** to specify that the selected drive will be the hot spare.

You’ll see the words “Hot Spare” appear next to the drive in the Available Drives list.

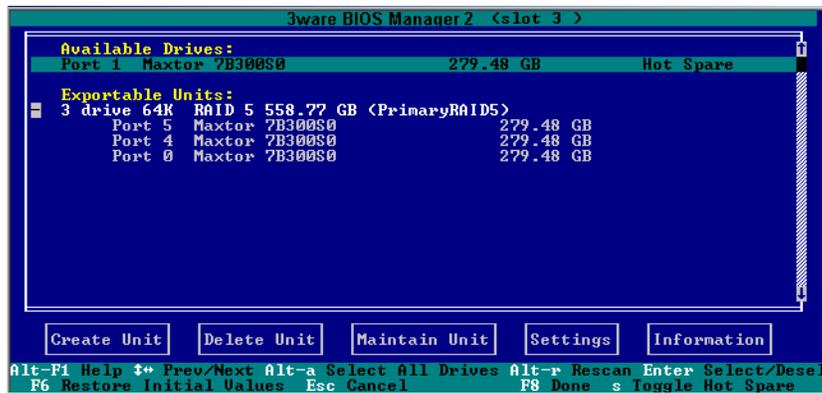


Figure 61. Hot Spare Indicated

If a hot spare is already enabled, you can disable it by pressing **s** again.

- 3 If you are finished making changes in 3BM, press **F8** to save the changes and exit.



Note: If the drive you designated as a spare is not large enough to replace a failed drive in a fault-tolerant unit, or if there is not a fault-tolerant unit for the spare to support, 3BM will notify you.

Naming a Unit

Units attached to 9000-series controllers can be given unique names to more easily identify them. A unit can be assigned a name when it is created. The name can also be added or changed later.

To name or rename a unit through 3DM

- 1 Make sure the appropriate controller is selected in the drop-down list at the right of the menu bar.
- 2 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 3 In the **Unit Names** section of the Controller Settings Page, locate the unit for which you want to change the name.
- 4 In the text box, enter or type over the name shown.
A name can be up to 21 characters, and can include dashes and underscores.
- 5 Click the **Save Names** button.



Note: If you want to cancel your change before saving it, click the **Reset Names** button.

To name or rename a unit through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 **Tab** to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Configure** and press **Enter**.
On the Configure Disk Array screen, the **Array Name** field is already selected.
- 4 Press **Enter** to open a text box.
- 5 Type a name for the unit and press **Enter**.
- 6 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to select it.
You return to the main 3BM screen.
- 7 When you are finished making changes, press **F8** to save them and exit 3BM.

Setting Unit Policies

The following policies are set when you create a unit, and can be adjusted later through settings on the **Maintenance** pages of 3DM and 3BM. Details about adjusting each policy are described on the following pages.

- **Unit Write Cache.** Determines whether write cache is enabled for the unit. When the write cache is enabled, data is stored locally on the drive before it is written to disk, allowing the computer to continue with its next task. This provides the most efficient access times for your computer system. When disabled, the computer will wait for the drive to write all the data to disk before going on to its next task.

This feature interacts with functionality of the BBU, if you have one, and with StorSave profiles on a 9550SX and 9590SE. For details, see “Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache” on page 143.

- **Auto-Verify.** Determines whether auto-verify is enabled for the unit (9000-series controllers only). When enabled, verify tasks are performed automatically when the firmware determines that one is needed. When disabled, you must manually specify when you want to verify a unit, even if you have set a verify schedule. For details, see “Setting Auto-Verify for a Unit” on page 145.
- **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild.** Determines whether ECC errors are ignored when they are encountered during a rebuild (9000-series controllers only). When not enabled, a rebuild will abort upon encountered an ECC error and the unit will be set to Degraded. For details, see “Setting Continue on Source Error During Rebuild” on page 146.
- **Queuing.** Determines whether NCQ (Native Command Queuing) is enabled for the unit (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only). When enabled for drives that support it, this policy can improve performance. For details, see “Enabling and Disabling Queuing for a Unit” on page 147.
- **StorSave Profile.** Determines what StorSave profile is used for the unit (9550SX and 9590SE controllers only). Three profiles are available: Protection, Balanced, and Performance. For details, see “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149.

Note: If the unit write cache is disabled, the StorSave Profile feature is disabled.

Enabling and Disabling the Unit Write Cache

Write cache is used to store data locally in memory on the drive before it is written to the disk drive media, allowing the computer to continue with its next task. Enabling write cache results in the most efficient access times for your computer system. However, there may be instances when you always want the computer to wait for the drive to write all the data to disk before going on to its next task. In this case, you must disable the write cache.

Write cache can be turned on or off for individual units in both 3DM and 3BM without changing the configuration or losing data from the drives.

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, when write cache is enabled, a StorSave profile specifies the level of data protection that you want for this unit. For more information, see “Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit” on page 149.

If you have a BBU (Battery Backup Unit) installed on the controller, the battery preserves the contents of the controller cache memory for a limited period of time (up to 72 hours) in the event of a system power loss. When a BBU is installed, if the battery is not “Ready,” write cache is disabled and cannot be enabled.



Notes:

For 9500S controllers, a setting at the BIOS level in 3BM can specify that the cache should be disabled in the event the unit degrades. When that option is selected, unit write cache cannot be enabled until the unit is rebuilt and again in optimal mode. In 3DM, you can see whether **Disable write cache on unit degrade** is set in the **Other Controller Settings** section of the **Controller Settings page**. For more information, see “Disabling Write Cache on Unit Degrade” on page 126.

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the **Disable write cache on unit degrade** setting is part of the StorSave Profile.

Write cache settings are not applicable for an unconfigured disk (JBOD).

If the StorSave Profile is “protect” and a unit has degraded, write cache cannot be enabled.

Do not use Windows Control Panel to enable or disable cache on 3ware RAID units.

To enable or disable unit write cache through 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the **Unit Policies** section of the Controller Settings Page, check the Write Cache box to enable it for the designated unit.

Unit Policies (Controller ID 0)	
	Write Cache
Unit 0 [RAID 0]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Unit 1 [RAID 1]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

To enable or disable unit write cache through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 **Tab** to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Configure** and press **Enter**.
- 4 In the Configure Disk Array screen, **Tab** to the field **Write Cache Settings**.

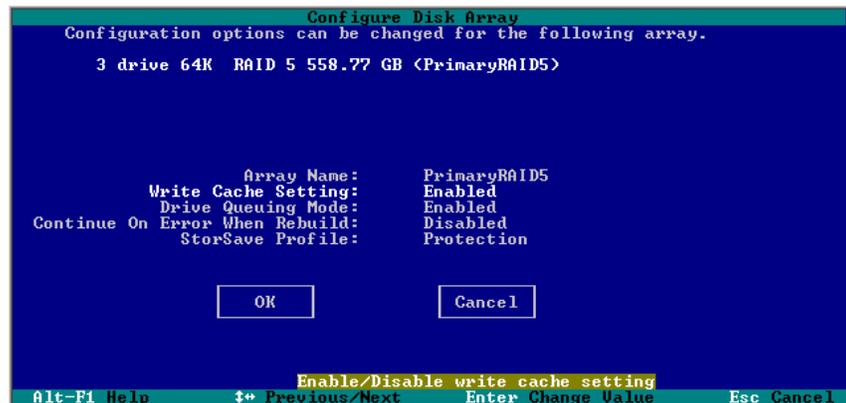


Figure 62. Unit Write Cache State in 3BM

The current setting—Enabled or Disabled—is shown. (The initial default setting is for write cache to be enabled.)

- 5 Press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select the setting you want, and press **Enter** again to choose it.

- 6 Tab to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to select it.
You return to the main 3BM screen.
- 7 When you are finished making changes, press **F8** to save them and exit 3BM.

Setting Auto-Verify for a Unit

For 9000-series controllers, the auto-verify policy causes verify tasks to be performed automatically, whenever the controller firmware algorithms determine that a verify task is needed. This feature is designed to make verification of units easier. When you enable this for a unit, the controller will run verify tasks as they are required.

If there is no schedule set up for verify tasks, then the controller firmware can initiate a verify task at any time. If a verify time window is scheduled, then the controller will not start a verify task for that unit outside the time window, and may or may not start a verify task for that unit within the time window, depending on whether one is needed.

If Auto-verify is not set and there is no schedule for verify tasks, you must manually specify when you want to run a verify, on the 3DM **Management** page. If a schedule is set for verify, then the verify that you manually start will only run during the scheduled time.

You can set this policy while creating a unit through 3DM or CLI, and you can change it for existing units.

To set the auto-verify policy for an existing unit

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the **Unit Policies** section of the Controller Settings Page, check the Auto Verify box for the unit for which you want to set it. (To disable this policy, uncheck the box.)

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made (Figure 63).

Setting Continue on Source Error During Rebuild

For 9000-series controllers, the **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild** policy is available for units which are redundant. (For units which are not redundant, this option is not shown on the screen.) When this policy is set, ECC errors are ignored when they are encountered during a rebuild. When this policy is not set, a rebuild will abort upon encountering an ECC error and the unit will be set back to Degraded.

Since enabling this option could result in the loss of some source data in the event of source errors, select this option only if you want to ensure that a rebuild will complete successfully without manually intervention. If the rebuild fails and **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild** is not selected, then you have the option to start a rebuild manually. It is recommended that a file system check be executed when the rebuild completes.

To set the Continue on Source Error During Rebuild policy in 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the **Unit Policies** section of the Controller Settings Page, check the boxes to select the policies you want to be in effect for each unit

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made (Figure 63).

The screenshot shows the 3DM web interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs: Summary, Information, Management, Monitor, 3DM 2 Settings, and Help. The 'Management' tab is active, and the 'Controller Settings' sub-tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there is a 'Select Controller' dropdown menu set to 'Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)'. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Background Task Rate (Controller ID 0):** Contains 'Rebuild/Migrate Rate' and 'Verify Rate' settings, each with radio buttons for 'Faster Rebuild', 'Faster I/O', and 'Faster Verify'.
- Unit Policies (Controller ID 0):** A table with columns: Unit, Write Cache, Auto Verify, Continue on Source Error during Rebuild, Queuing, and StorSave. The 'Unit 0 [RAID 5]' row has 'Write Cache' checked, 'Auto Verify' unchecked, 'Continue on Source Error during Rebuild' checked, 'Queuing' checked, and 'StorSave' set to 'Performance'.
- Unit Names (Controller ID 0):** A text input field for 'Unit 0 [RAID 5]' containing 'PrimaryRAID5', with 'Save Names' and 'Reset Names' buttons below it.
- Other Controller Settings (Controller ID 0):** Contains 'Auto Rebuild' and 'Auto Carving' (both Enabled), 'Carve Size' (1024), 'Number of Drives per Spin-up' (1), 'Delay between Spin-up' (2 second(s)), and 'Export Unconfigured Disk' (No).

At the bottom of the page, it says 'Last updated Thu, Mar 09, 2006 12:42:38PM' and 'This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)'.

Figure 63. Setting Unit Policies in 3DM

To set the Continue on Source Error During Rebuild policy in 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 Tab to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Configure** and press **Enter**.
- 4 In the **Configure Disk Array** screen, **Tab** to the field **Continue on Source Error During Rebuild**.
- 5 Press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select the setting you wan (Enabled or Disabled)t, and press **Enter** again to choose it.
- 6 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to select it.
You return to the main 3BM screen.
- 7 When you are finished making changes, press **F8** to save them and exit 3BM.

Enabling and Disabling Queuing for a Unit

Some drives support NCQ (Native Command Queuing), which can result in increased performance for applications that require a lot of random access of data (usually server-type applications).

When enabled, NCQ can improve performance; it causes command reordering to be done on the drive, itself.

In order to make use of NCQ, the feature must be enabled at both the drive and the controller. You can enable support for NCQ in 3ware 9550SX and 9590SE controllers on a per-unit basis, as described below.

You can see whether NCQ is supported and enabled for a particular drive in the Drive Details window. For details, see “Drive Details Window” on page 92.



Note: Not all drives support NCQ. If a drive does not support NCQ, the policy setting for the controller is ignored.

To enable or disable queuing for a unit through 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the **Unit Policies** section of the Controller Settings Page, enable queuing by checking the box under “Queuing” for the designated unit; disable it by unchecking the box.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

To enable or disable queuing for a unit through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 Tab to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Configure** and press **Enter**.
- 4 In the **Configure Disk Array** screen, **Tab** to the field **Drive Queuing Mode**.
- 5 Press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select the setting you want (Enabled or Disabled), and press **Enter** again to choose it.
- 6 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to select it.
You return to the main 3BM screen.
- 7 When you are finished making changes, press **F8** to save them and exit 3BM.

Setting the StorSave Profile for a Unit

You can set the desired level of data protection versus performance for a unit by selecting the StorSave Profile. Three profiles are provided: *Protection* (maximum data protection), *Performance* (maximum performance, less data protection), and *Balanced* (a middle ground). The default is *Protection*.



Note: If the write cache setting is disabled for a unit, the StorSave Profile capability does not apply and is automatically disabled.

About StorSave Profile Levels

The three profiles automatically adjust several different factors that affect protection and performance on a per unit basis. These are summarized in the table below and further explained after the table.

Table 8: StorSave Profile Definitions

	Protection (Default)	Balanced	Performance
Definition	Maximum data protection, but slower performance.	More data protection than <i>Performance</i> but less data protection than <i>Protection</i> .	Maximum performance for the unit, but less data protection.
FUA (Force Unit Access)	Honor FUA (If no BBU is present) Ignore FUA (If BBU is present)	Honor FUA (If no BBU is present) Ignore FUA (If BBU is present)	Ignore FUA
Write Journaling	Enabled	Disabled, if no BBU present. (Enabled, if BBU is present.)	Disabled. (If BBU is present, this essentially disables the BBU for this unit.)
Disable Cache on Degrade	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled

- **FUA (Force Unit Access).** FUA commands are a way that the RAID controller or a program (such as a database program) can ensure that data is actually written to the disk drive media, and is not stored in cache. When a write command is followed with a FUA command, then the disk drive will only issue “command complete” to the controller once the data is written to media. When performance is considered more important than protection, it may be desirable to ignore FUA commands.

The Protection and Balanced profiles honor FUA commands if no BBU is present; the Performance profile ignores them regardless of whether a BBU is present.

If you use a battery backup unit (BBU), FUA is ignored, because the BBU preserves the contents of the controller cache memory for a limited period of time (up to 72 hours), in the event of a power failure.

- **Write Journaling.** Write journaling tracks the writing of data to disk and preserves a copy of data that has not yet been written to the disk media. Following a power failure or in the event of accidental drive removal and reinsertion, the firmware can recover the unit without data loss. All pending writes sitting in the controller cache are replayed after power is restored or the drive is reinserted and are flushed from the controller to the drive.

Using write journaling helps protect your data, however it can have an impact on performance.

The Protection profile enables write journaling; the Performance Profile disables it. The Balanced profile disables it only if no BBU is present.

If write journaling is disabled and a BBU is present, then it is as if the BBU was disabled for that unit.

- **Write cache disabled on degrade.** In the event that a unit degrades, the use of write cache can be disabled until the unit is rebuilt. Once the unit is rebuilt, you must enable the write cache manually using 3DM2, 3BM, or the CLI. The write cache will not automatically reenab when the unit is rebuilt.

The Protection profile enables this feature, so that write cache is disabled; the Performance and Balanced profiles disable this feature, so that write cache continues to be enabled.

Setting the StorSave Profile through 3DM

In 3DM, the StorSave Profile is a unit policy that can be set on the **Controller Settings** page.

To set the StorSave profile through 3DM

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar in 3DM.
- 2 In the **Unit Policies** section of the Controller Settings Page, select the profile you want to use from the drop-down list in the StorSave column.

The page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

Setting the StorSave Profile through 3BM

In 3BM, the StorSave Profile is set on the **Configure Disk Array** screen.

To set the StorSave Profile through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 Tab to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Configure** and press **Enter**.
- 4 In the **Configure Disk Array** screen, **Tab** to the field StorSave Profile.
The current setting—Protection, Balanced, or Performance—is shown.
(The default setting is Protection.)
- 5 Press **Enter** to display the choices, use the **arrow keys** to select the setting you want, and press **Enter** again to choose it.



- 6 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter** to select it.
You return to the main 3BM screen.
- 7 When you are finished making changes, press **F8** to save them and exit 3BM.

Changing An Existing Configuration

With 3ware 9000 series RAID controllers you can convert one RAID configuration into another while the unit is online. This process is known as RAID Level Migration (RLM).



Note: Units on a 7xxx/8xxx series controller cannot be migrated.

You can use RAID Level Migration to make two main types of configuration changes:

- RAID Level
- Unit Capacity Expansion

You can also use RLM to change the stripe size of a unit.

Table 9: Valid Migration Paths

Source	Destination							
	R0	R1	R5	R10	R50	Single	JBOD	Spare
R0	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
R1	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
R5	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
R10	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
R50	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Single	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
JBOD	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Spare	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No



Warning: Never split a mirror into 2 single (identical) drives that you are booted or mounted from. The file system on the second drive will be left in an unclean state since any pending writes cannot be completed after the split occurs.

Changing RAID Level

You can use migrate to change the RAID level of an existing unit while the unit is online, without experiencing any data loss. When you change a RAID level, you may also add one or more drives to the unit. You can also migrate to change the unit's stripe size. For example, a four-drive RAID 5 with a 64KB stripe size can be migrated to a four-drive RAID 5 with 256KB stripe size. The steps below describe how to change a RAID level in 3DM2.



Note: Once migration starts, the unit stays in the migrating state until the migration process is complete. The migration process cannot be aborted, and must be allowed to finish before a rebuild or verify to the unit is permitted.



Warning: It is important that you allow migration to complete before adding to the unit. Making physical changes to the unit during migration may cause the migration process to stop, and can jeopardize the safety of your data.

To change the RAID level of a unit

- 1 In 3DM 2, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 2 In the Unit Maintenance table on the Maintenance Page, select the unit for which you wish to change the RAID level, by checking the box next to the Unit ID.
- 3 Click the **Migrate Unit** button.
The Migrate dialog box appears.
- 4 Select any drives to be added to the unit.
- 5 Select the new RAID level.
- 6 Optionally, select a new Stripe size.
- 7 Click **OK**.
The Maintenance page updates to show the new unit and the Migration progress.
- 8 Inform the operating system of the change, as described below.



Note: You can only migrate a unit to a RAID level that has the same or more capacity as the existing one. A four-drive RAID 5 unit can migrate to a four-drive RAID 0, but a four-drive RAID 0 unit cannot migrate to a four-drive RAID 5, without adding another drive, due to the need for additional storage capacity for parity bits.

Expanding Unit Capacity

You can expand a unit's capacity by adding one or more drives to it without changing the RAID level, except for singles and RAID 1 units. (Since a single can only have one drive, and a RAID 1 can only have two drives, if you add a drive to either, the RAID level must be changed.)

Expanding unit capacity can be accomplished while the unit is online, without experiencing any data loss. This process is also referred to as Online Capacity Expansion (OCE).

To expand a unit's capacity

- 1 In 3DM 2, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 2 In the Unit Maintenance table on the Maintenance Page, select the unit you wish to expand by checking the box next to the Unit ID.

- 3 Click the **Migrate Unit** button.

The Migrate dialog box appears, listing the drives which can be added to the unit.

- 4 Select the drive(s) you wish to add to the unit by checking the Port ID box next to each one.

- 5 If desired or necessary, select the appropriate RAID level.

- 6 Click **OK**.

The Maintenance page updates to show the newly reconfigured unit. The Status column title indicates that Migration is in progress.

- 7 If you booted from the unit that is being migrated, when migration is complete, reboot your system. Then turn to Step 4 under “Informing the Operating System of Changed Configuration” on page 155.

- 8 Inform the operating system of the change, as described below.



Note: You can also perform these steps using the CLI. For more information, see the *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Informing the Operating System of Changed Configuration

After you change the configuration of a unit, you must inform the operating system of the change, and you may need to re-partition the unit.

Resizing the file system to match the new partition size is not automatic. It may be necessary to expand the file-system using tools specific to your operating system.

In addition, in order to use the new capacity, you need to either resize the existing partition or add a new partition.



Note: This step can only be done after the system has completed the migration or online capacity process. The operating system will not see the capacity until that process is complete.

To inform the operating system that secondary storage has been upgraded

- 1 If you change the configuration of the boot unit (the unit containing the operating system), you must reboot the system in order to see the new unit capacity.

- 2 Unmount all file systems.

Under Windows, go to **Start > Administrative Tools > Computer Management**, and select **Disk Management**. Remove the logical drive letter for the unit.

Under Linux and FreeBSD, from a command prompt, type `sync <enter>`, `sync <enter>`, `sync <enter>`.

You can then unmount the unit with this command: `umount <mount location>`

- 3 If the reconfigured unit is secondary storage, you must have the controller rescan, in order to update unit information.

- a In 3DM2, select the appropriate unit and choose **Management > Maintenance**. Click the **Remove Unit** button.

- b After the unit has been removed, click the **Rescan** button. The new unit capacity displays.

- 4 Resize the partition and file system or create a new partition.

In Windows, use the disk management utility to determine whether the disk is a basic disk or a dynamic disk.

- Go to **Administrative Tools > Computer Management**, and then select **Disk Management** in the list on the left.

Only dynamic disks can be expanded with Windows Disk Management. If the unit is shown as a basic disk, you must either convert it to a dynamic disk or use a 3rd party tool to rubrication the unit.

- If the unit is shown as a dynamic disk, right-click on it and choose **Extend Volume** to launch the **Extend Volume** wizard.

In Linux and FreeBSD, the tools to expand the partition and file system can vary, depending on the kernel version and file system that you are using. Please consult your Linux/FreeBSD documentation and the 3ware Knowledgebase for more information.

Deleting a Unit

You delete a unit—either an array of disks, or a Single Disk—when you want to reconfigure the unit, or use the drives for other purposes.

After you delete a unit, the drives appear in the list of Available Drives.



Warning: When a unit is deleted, all of the data on that unit will be lost. The drives cannot be reassembled into the same unit because the data on it is erased. If you want to reassemble the drives on another controller, use the **Remove Unit** button in 3DM instead of the **Delete Unit** button. Or, if you're at the BIOS level already, you can shut down the computer and physically move them to another 3ware 9000 series RAID controller. When you restart your system, the controller will recognize the unit. For more information see “Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another” on page 163.

If you have incomplete drives, or drives that appear with a message such as “Unsupported DCB,” indicating that they were previously part of a unit on a 3ware 7000/8000 series controller, they must be deleted before you use them. (If you want to move a unit from a 7/8000 controller to the 9000 controller, you must convert the drives first. For more information, see “Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another” on page 163.)

Deleting a Unit through 3DM

In 3DM, the command for deleting a unit is on the **Maintenance** page. Be sure to follow steps 1 through 3 in the instructions before using the Delete command.

To delete a unit through 3DM

- 1 Make sure no I/Os are being issued to the unit you want to remove.
For example, make sure you are not copying files to the unit, and make sure that there are no applications with open files on that unit.
- 2 Backup any data you want to keep.

- 3 Unmount the unit.

This step is very important. If a unit is not unmounted and you delete it, it is the equivalent of physically yanking a hard drive out from under the operating system. Resulting behavior depends on which operating system you are using and what kind of I/O is being done, however you will typically see really bad results, bad errors, and most likely a reset of the controller or a system hang.

Under Windows, go to **Start > Administrative Tools > Computer Management**, and select **Disk Management**. Remove the logical drive letter for the unit.

Under Linux and FreeBSD, you can unmount the unit with this command:
`umount <mount location>`

- 4 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 5 In the Unit Maintenance table on the Maintenance Page, select the unit you want to remove and click **Delete Unit** (Figure 65).

The screenshot shows the 3DM Maintenance page in a Microsoft Internet Explorer browser. The page title is "3ware 3DM - Maintenance - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser address bar shows "https://192.168.2.143:888". The page header includes "3ware 3DM 2 SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4)" and "ADMINISTRATOR logged in Logout". The navigation menu includes "Summary", "Information", "Management", "Monitor", "3DM 2 Settings", and "Help". The "Maintenance" tab is selected, and the "Select Controller" dropdown is set to "Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)".

Below the navigation menu, there is a "Rescan Controller" button with the note "(This will scan all empty ports for newly inserted drives)".

The main content area is titled "Unit Maintenance (Controller ID 1)". It contains a table with the following data:

Unit	Drives	RAID	Capacity	Status	Action
Unit 0	3 drives	RAID 5	298.00 GB	OK	
Port 0	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	
Port 1	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	
Port 2	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	
Unit 1	3 drives	RAID 5	298.00 GB	OK	
Port 3	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	
Port 4	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	
Port 5	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]	

Below the table, there are buttons for "Verify Unit", "Rebuild Unit", "Migrate Unit", "Remove Unit", and "Delete Unit". A warning message states: "Before removing or deleting a unit, make sure there is no I/O on the unit and unmount it".

The "Available Drives (Controller ID 1)" section shows two ports:

Port	Model	Capacity	Status	Action
Port 6	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Port 7	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]

At the bottom, there are buttons for "Select All Drives" and "Create Unit". The footer includes the text: "Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM. This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s). 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010. Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved."

Figure 65. Deleting a Unit Through 3DM

- When a message asks you to confirm, click **OK**.

Configuration information associating the drives with the unit is deleted, and the individual drives appear in the Available Drives list (Figure 66). You can now use them as part of another unit, or designate them as Spares, for use in a rebuild.

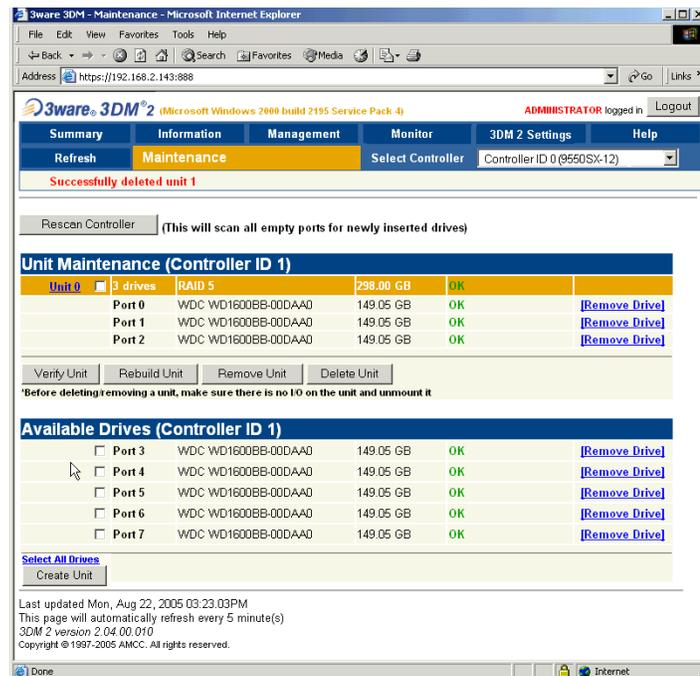


Figure 66. Unit Successfully Deleted through 3DM

Deleting a Unit through 3BM

In 3BM, the command for deleting a unit is on the main 3BM screen.

To delete a unit through 3BM

- At the main 3BM screen, select the unit in the list of Exportable Units by highlighting it and pressing **Enter** or **Space**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- Tab** to the **Delete Unit** button and press **Enter**.



Note: If you want to delete an incomplete drive or unusable unit, or a drive that appears with a message such as “Unsupported DCB,” select it in a similar manner and then select **Delete Unit**, even though it appears in the list **Incomplete Drives and Others**.



Warning: Any data on the unit will be lost once the unit is deleted. Backup any data that you want to keep.

- 3 On the **Delete Disk Array** screen, review the information about the unit to make sure it is the one you want to delete.



Figure 67. Deleting a Unit in 3BM

- 4 **Tab** to the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

You return to the main 3BM screen, and the drives associated with the unit now appear in the list of Available Drives.

Remember: The unit is not actually deleted and no data is overwritten until you press the **F8** key to save your changes, or press **Esc** and select Yes when asked if you want to save.

- 5 **Press F8** to save your changes, or press **Esc** and then **Yes**.

Removing a Unit

Removing a unit allows you to safely remove drives from a controller in order to move the unit to another controller or to store the drives for safekeeping purposes. This process is sometimes referred to as “array roaming.” Hot swap carriers are required unless you power down first.

When you remove a unit (in contrast to deleting a unit), information about the unit remains intact on the drives. This allows the drives to be reassembled into a unit again on this controller, or if moved to another controller.



Warning: It is important to remove the unit through software, before removing it physically. Failure to do so could result in a system crash or hang and may even corrupt the data and the unit configuration from being reassembled later.



Note: You can also remove a drive, if you want to force a degrade on a redundant unit, or if you want to remove a drive from the “Available Drives” list so that you can then remove it from the system. For more information, see “Removing a Drive” on page 169.

Removing a Unit Through 3DM

In 3DM, the command for deleting a unit is on the **Maintenance** page. Be sure to follow steps 1 and 2 in the instructions before using the Remove command.

To remove a unit through 3DM



Note: If you do not have hot swap carriers, you do not need to remove a unit via 3DM. Simply power down the system and remove the applicable drives. Refer to your system’s user guide for details on removing fixed disks. If you do have hot swap carriers, follow the steps below.

- 1 Make sure no I/Os are being issued to the unit you want to remove.
For example, make sure you are not copying files to the unit, and make sure that there are no applications with open files on that unit.

- 2 Unmount the unit.

This step is very important. If a unit is not unmounted and you remove it, it is the equivalent of physically yanking a hard drive out from under

the operating system. Resulting behavior depends on which operating system you are using and what kind of I/O is being done, however you will typically see really bad results, bad errors, and most likely a reset of the controller or a system hang.

Under Windows, go to **Start > Administrative Tools > Computer Management**, and select **Disk Management**. Remove the logical drive letter for the unit.

Under Linux and FreeBSD, you can unmount the unit with this command:
`umount <mount location>`

- 3 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 4 In the **Unit Maintenance** table on the Maintenance Page, select the unit you want to remove and click **Remove Unit**.
- 5 When a message asks you to confirm, click **OK**.

The unit number and information is removed from the **Maintenance** page in 3DM.

The operating system is notified that the unit was removed. In Linux the device node associated with this unit is removed. In Windows the Device Manager will reflect the changes under the disk drives icon.

You can now physically remove the drives and move them to another controller. If you have a hotswap carrier, you can do this without shutting down the system. If you do not have a hot-swap carrier, power-down the system and ground yourself before making changes to the hardware.

If you change your mind and want to reuse the drives and unit on the current controller, click **Rescan Controller**.

Removing a Unit Through 3BM



Note: Even though removing a unit is supported in 3BM, you can also simply power down to remove the applicable drives since you are not booted yet.

To remove a unit through 3BM

- 1 If your drives are not in hot swap carriers, you do not need to remove a unit via 3BM. Simply power down and remove the applicable drives. Refer to your system's user guide for details on removing fixed disks.



Warning: Physically removing drives which are not in hot swap carriers can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

- 2 At the main 3BM screen, highlight the unit you want to remove and press Enter to select it.

An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that the unit is selected.

- 3 Tab to the Maintain Unit button and press Enter.

- 4 In the pop-up menu, select Remove and press Enter.

You can now physically remove the drives and move them to another controller. If you have a hot swap carrier, you can do this without shutting down the system.

Moving a Unit from One Controller to Another

After you have configured a unit on a 3ware 9000 series controller (9500S, 9550SX, or 9590SE), you can move it to a different 3ware 9000 series controller, and retain the configuration on the new controller. This is referred to as “array roaming.”

When connecting the unit to the new controller, you do not have to physically connect the drives to the same ports to which they were connected on the previous controller. The firmware will still recognize the unit. This feature is referred to as “disk roaming.”

3DM includes two features that help you do this without powering down the system, allowing you to hot-swap the unit. The Remove Unit feature lets you prepare a unit to be disconnected from the controller, and the Rescan feature checks the controller for drives that are now connected, and updates the 3DM screens with current information. For details, see “Removing a Unit” on page 161 and “Rescanning the Controller” on page 171.



Caution: If you have a configured RAID unit on an older controller, such as an 8506, and you move the drives to a new controller, such as 9500-S, you must first convert the units from 7xxx/8xxx format to 9xxx format using a 3ware utility available from 3ware Technical Support.

You cannot move drives back from the 9500S/9550SX/9590SE controller to an older controller and maintain the data. If you want to swap drives back and forth between controller cards, be sure to have a backup of your data. For 9500S controllers, you will also need to unlock the drives, as described under “Unlocking Drives Configured on a 9500S Controller” on page 164.

Unlocking Drives Configured on a 9500S Controller

When drives are configured into a unit on a 9500S controller, they become locked for use with 9500S series controllers.

If you want to use these drives on an older 3ware controller, a non-3ware controller, or connect them directly to a motherboard ATA controller, you must first unlock them.

You can unlock drives in the following ways:

- In 3BM (3ware BIOS Manager), highlight the unit you want to unlock, and press the **r** key (for remove). Then shut down the system.
- In either 3BM or 3DM, delete the unit, as described under “Deleting a Unit” on page 157. All data on the drives will be permanently deleted, and the drives will be unlocked.
- Boot to the operating system. Put a file system on the unit by formatting and partitioning it. Shut down the operating system cleanly. The drives will be unlocked.

Moving Units from an 8000 Controller to a 9000 Controller

It is possible to move your 8000 storage units to a 9000 series controller. You will then have the advantages of the 9000 series controller.

The drive units must be in normal mode before moving the units. Incomplete, degraded, rebuilding, or initializing units cannot be converted. In addition, RAID 0, 10, and 5 units must use a standard 64 KB stripe size.

The procedure used to move units from the 8000 to the 9000 series depends on the type of storage unit that you have. For most units, follow the steps below. For units using JBOD, see “Moving Legacy JBOD Units to a 9000 Controller” on page 166.



Note: In order to preserve the data that is on the units attached to the 8000, you will need to run a special utility, available from 3ware Technical Support, to convert the units to a format that the 9000 controller can use. Contact Technical Support to obtain the utility. (This utility is not required for legacy JBOD units.)

Do not remove the 8000 board from your system until you have converted the units. The units must be attached to the 8000 controller when you run the utility.



Warning: Drives configured on the 9500S controllers cannot be used with older 3ware controllers, non-3ware controllers, or directly on the motherboard without first deleting the existing configuration to unlock the drive in read only mode.

To move units under Linux or FreeBSD

- 1 Upgrade your driver to the 9000 series driver.
- 2 Run the conversion utility to convert the units.
- 3 Power down the system, disconnect the drives from the 8000 controller and remove the controller from the system.
- 4 Install the 9000 controller and attach the drives to the 9000 board, as described earlier in this section.

To move units under Windows

- 1 Install the 9000 controller in your system, while leaving the 8000 controller installed.
- 2 Install the Windows driver. (For details, see “Driver Installation Under Windows” on page 30.)
- 3 Run the conversion utility to convert the units.
- 4 Power down the system, disconnect the drives from the 7/8000 controller and remove that controller from the system.
- 5 Attach the drives to the 9000 board.

Moving Legacy JBOD Units to a 9000 Controller

The steps for moving legacy JBOD units vary, depending on the operating system you are using.

To move legacy JBOD units under Linux or FreeBSD

- 1 Upgrade your driver to the 9000 series driver.
- 2 Power down the system, disconnect the drives from the 8000 controller and remove the controller from the system.
- 3 Install the 9000 controller and attach the drives to the 9000 board, as described earlier in this section.
- 4 Reboot the system and enter the 3ware 9000 series BIOS (3BM) by pressing Alt-3. Enable the Export JBOD policy on the Policy screen.
- 5 Press the **F8** or **Esc** key to save and exit.

To move legacy JBOD units under Windows

- 1 Install the 9000 controller in your system, while leaving the 8000 controller installed.
- 2 Install the Windows driver. (For details, see “Driver Installation Under Windows” on page 30.)
- 3 Power down the system, disconnect the drives from the 8000 controller and remove that controller from the system.
- 4 Attach the drives to the 9000 board.
- 5 Reboot the system and enter the 3ware 9000 series BIOS (3BM) by pressing Alt-3. Enable the Export JBOD policy on the Policy screen.
- 6 Press the **F8** or **Esc** key to save and exit.

Moving Units from a 9500S to a 9550SX or 9590SE Controller

It is fairly straightforward to move units from a 9500S controller to a 9550SX or 9590SE controller. The steps you follow depend on whether you are booting from the drives attached to the 9500S, or whether they are being used for secondary storage.

To move a bootable unit from a 9500S to a 9550SX or 9590SE controller

- 1 If you are working with a Linux system, skip to step 2.

If you are working with a Windows system:

- a Power down the computer.
 - b Install the 9550SX or 9590SE controller in the computer, leaving the 9500S installed and its drives attached.
 - c Boot to the operating system.
- 2 Install the driver for the 9550SX and 9590SE.
If you are using Linux, you will also need to update the initial RAM disk with the `mkinitrd` command.
 - 3 Power down the computer.
 - 4 Remove the 9500S controller.
 - 5 If you are working with a Linux system, install the 9550SX or 9590SE controller.
 - 6 Attach the drives that were on the to the 9500S to the 9550SX or 9590SE controller.
 - 7 Power up the computer and verify that the upgrade is complete. (The existing unist should be available for use.)

To move a secondary storage unit from a 9500S to a 9550SX or 9590SE controller

- 1 Power down the computer.
- 2 Remove the 9500S controller.
- 3 Install the 9550SX or 9590SE controller in the computer.
- 4 Attach the drives that were on the 9500S to the 9550SX or 9590SE.
- 5 Boot to the operating system.
- 6 Install the driver for the 9550SX and 9590SE.
If you are using Linux, you may also need to update the initial RAM disk with the `mkinitrd` command.
- 7 Reboot if you are prompted to do so by the operating system.
Some operating systems (for example, Windows 2003) will allow the unit(s) attached to the controller to be used at this point without an additional reboot.

Adding a Drive through 3DM



Note: If you have a 9550SX or 9590SE controller, when you add a drive to your system and connect it to the controller, it is automatically detected and listed in 3DM and the CLI. If you have a 9500S or 7/8000 controller, follow the steps below to make a new drive available.

If you have a hot-swap carrier, you can add a drive to your system and make it available through 3DM without powering down the system.

Without hot swap carriers, you should not add a drive via 3DM. Instead, power down the system and add the applicable drives.



Warning: Physically adding a drive without a hotswap carrier and without powering down your system can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

To add a drive through 3DM when you have hot-swap carriers

- 1 Connect the drive physically to the controller.
- 2 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 3 On the Maintenance Page, click **Rescan Controller**.

The drive will appear in the list of available drives. You can now use it in a new RAID configuration, or as a replacement drive in the event that another drive degrades.

If you want to use this drive as a spare, see “Creating a Hot Spare” on page 139.

Removing a Drive

If you have a hot-swap carrier and want to physically remove a drive from your system without powering it down, you must first remove it through the 3ware software. This is required for 3ware controllers before the 9550SX model, and recommended for the 9550SX and 9590SE models.

This is useful if you know that a drive is developing a problem and you want to replace it, or to replace a drive which has already failed.

**Warnings:**

Physically removing a drive that is not in a hot swap carrier can result in a system hang or may even damage the system and the drive.

The steps below will destroy any information that identifies this drive as part of a RAID unit. *Existing data on this drive will no longer be available.*

**Notes:**

If you want to remove a unit from your system and reassemble it in another system, do not follow these steps. Instead, turn to “Removing a Unit” on page 161.

If you unplug a drive on a 9500S controller without first removing it through 3DM or 3BM, the controller will not recognize it as gone. Always use the **Remove Drive** command to remove a drive before unplugging it.

If you unplug a drive on a 9550SX or 9590SE controller without first removing it in 3DM, it will be listed as removed, however it will not be completely removed unless you Rescan the controller.

To remove a drive

- 1 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.

On the Maintenance Page, remove Drive links appear next to all drives that can be removed from units, and next to drives in the Available Drives list.

- 2 Locate the drive you want to remove and click the **Remove Drive** link (Figure 68).

(You can remove a drive that is part of a redundant unit, or that is shown in the list of Available Drives.)

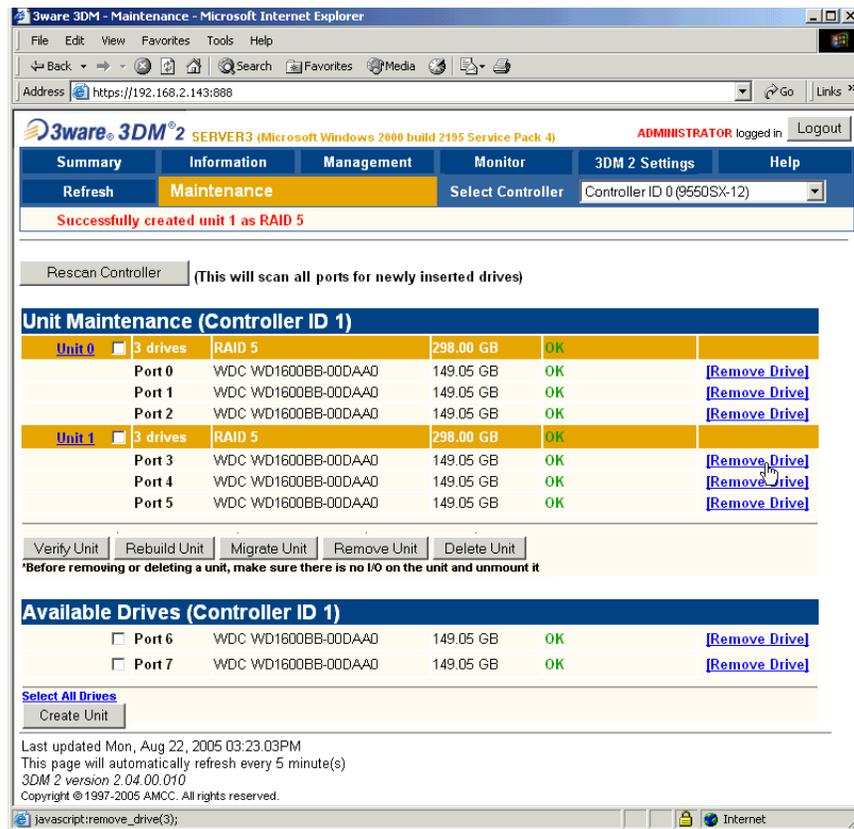


Figure 68. Removing a Drive in 3DM

- When 3DM asks you to confirm that you want to remove the drive, click **OK**.

You can now remove the drive from your system.

If you removed a drive that was part of a unit, the unit may become degraded, as shown in (Figure 69).

3ware 3DM - Maintenance - Microsoft Internet Explorer

Address: https://192.168.2.143:888

3ware 3DM² SERVER3 (Microsoft Windows 2000 build 2195 Service Pack 4) ADMINISTRATOR logged in Logout

Summary Information Management Monitor 3DM 2 Settings Help

Refresh Maintenance Select Controller Controller ID 0 (9550SX-12)

Removed drive from port 3. You may now unplug it from the controller

Rescan Controller (This will scan all ports for newly inserted drives)

Unit Maintenance (Controller ID 1)

Unit	Drives	RAID	Capacity	Status	Actions
Unit 0	3 drives	RAID 5	298.00 GB	OK	
Port 0	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0		149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Port 1	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0		149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Port 2	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0		149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
Unit 1	3 drives	RAID 5	298.00 GB	DEGRADED	
--	--		--	DRIVE NOT PRESENT	
Port 4	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0		149.05 GB	OK	
Port 5	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0		149.05 GB	OK	

Verify Unit Rebuild Unit Migrate Unit Remove Unit Delete Unit

*Before removing or deleting a unit, make sure there is no I/O on the unit and unmount it

Available Drives (Controller ID 1)

<input type="checkbox"/> Port 6	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]
<input type="checkbox"/> Port 7	WDC WD1600BB-00DAA0	149.05 GB	OK	[Remove Drive]

Select All Drives
Create Unit

Last updated Mon, Aug 22, 2005 03:23:03PM
This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
3DM 2 version 2.04.00.010
Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 69. Result of Removing Drive from Unit in 3DM

Rescanning the Controller

When you make a change by physically adding or removing drives or units, you can have 3DM rescan the controller to update the list of units and available drives shown on the **Maintenance** page. For more information, see “Adding a Drive through 3DM” on page 168.

This is useful in a variety of circumstances. For example, if you added new drives to the controller, you can make them available by rescanning the controller.

Rescanning checks all ports on the controller. It then updates the status of all ports, so if error conditions have been fixed, the status is updated to reflect that.

For more details about how the Rescan feature works, see the information in the Reference section, under “Maintenance Page” on page 100.

To rescan the controller through 3DM

1 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.

2 On the Maintenance Page, click **Rescan Controller**.

3DM scans the controller for information about units and drives, and updates the information shown on the **Maintenance** page.

To rescan the controller through 3BM

1 From the main 3BM screen, press Alt-r.

You are warned that any configuration changes you have made in 3BM will be lost.

2 Type **y** for Yes.

The controller is rescanned.

Maintaining Units

3ware RAID controllers include a number of features in the firmware that help maintain the integrity of your drives, check for errors, repair bad sectors, and rebuild units when drives degrade. In addition, 3ware BIOS Manager (3BM) and 3ware Disk Manager (3DM) provide tools to let you check unit and drive status, and manually start background maintenance tasks. 3DM also lets you review alarms and errors and schedule background maintenance tasks.

This section includes the following tasks to help you maintain your units:

- Checking Unit and Drive Status through 3DM
- Reviewing Alarms and Errors
- About Background Tasks
- Scheduling Background Tasks
- Rebuilding Units
- Verifying Units

Checking Unit and Drive Status through 3DM

The information screens in 3DM let you see both summary and detailed information about your 3ware RAID controller, configured units, and available drives in 3DM. You can quickly see the status of your controller and drives, and drill down to find details about any units or drives that have problems.

A status column on the controller, unit, and drive information pages lets you quickly see whether everything is working (OK), performing a task (such as initializing, verifying, or rebuilding), or has a problem (error, degraded, warning).

Figure 70 illustrates how you can drill down to get additional detail about units and drives in your system.

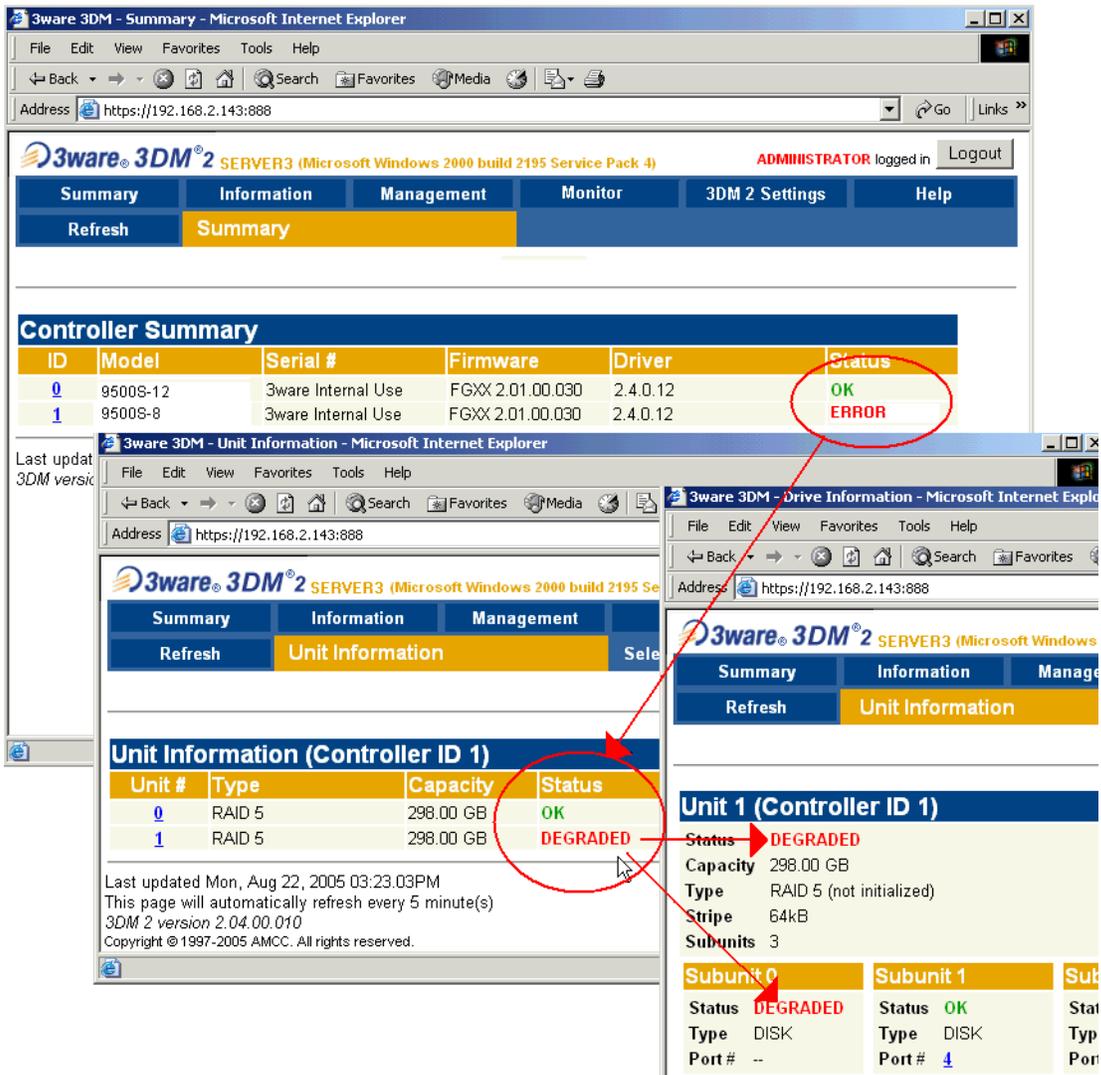


Figure 70. Drilling Down to Check Status Information

For details about specific pages with summary and detailed status information, see these topics in the 3DM Reference section:

- “Controller Summary Page” on page 84
- “Controller Details Page” on page 86
- “Unit Information Page” on page 87
- “Unit Details Page” on page 89
- “Drive Information Page” on page 90
- “Drive Details Window” on page 92

Reviewing Alarms and Errors

3DM provides several levels of detail about events:

- A summary log of all alarms on the **Alarms** page
- A detailed error listing, available for download from the **Controller Details** page
- **SMART** data for individual drives

Viewing Alarms

The **Alarms** page in 3DM shows a log of all events (also called Asynchronous Event Notifications, or AENs) that have occurred on units. These events include alarms that occur when the 3ware RAID controller requires attention, such as when a disk unit becomes degraded and is no longer fault tolerant. They also include SMART notifications, and informational notification, such as when sectors have been repaired during verification.

Alarm messages are categorized by the following levels of severity:

- Errors, shown next to a red box
- Warnings, shown next to a yellow box
- Information, shown next to a blue box

3DM can e-mail notifications of these events to one or more recipients. For more information, see “Managing E-mail Event Notification” on page 81.

To view alarms

- Choose **Monitor > Alarms**.

For detailed information about the Alarms page, see “Alarms Page” on page 109.

Downloading an Error Log

You can download an error log containing information from the firmware log. This can be useful when troubleshooting certain types of problems. For example, you might want to send the saved file to 3ware Customer Support for assistance when troubleshooting.

To download the error log

- 1 Choose **Information > Controller Details** from the menu bar.
- 2 Make sure the correct controller is displayed in the **Select Controller** field in the menu bar.
- 3 On the Controller Details Page, click the **Download Error Log** link.
- 4 When the Save or Open dialog box appears, navigate to where you want to save the log and click **OK**.

Viewing SMART Data About a Drive

You can view SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology) data about a drive to help troubleshoot problems that occur. SMART data is available on all disk drives (unit members, Single Disks, and Hot Spares).

You can also set self-tests that will check the SMART attributes and post messages to the Alarms page when they are exceeded. For more information, see “Selecting Self-tests to be Performed” on page 188.

To view SMART data

- 1 Choose **Information > Drive Information** from the menu bar.
- 2 On the Drive Information Page, click the port number for the drive you are interested in.

A window showing details of the SMART data opens. The data is shown as hex values.

About Background Tasks

Background tasks are maintenance tasks that help maintain the integrity of your drives and data. These tasks include

- Initialization of new units
- Rebuilds when units have become degraded
- Unit verification
- Migration of an on-line RAID from one RAID configuration to another
- Self-tests

About Initialization

Some RAID levels must be initialized for best performance. (For specifics, see “Initialization of Different RAID Types” on page 178.) Initialization can take place before the units are put into service (foreground initialization) or while the units are being used (background initialization).

Initialization makes parity information valid. Foreground initialization does this by simply writing zeroes to all the drives so that they all have the same values. Background initialization uses an algorithm to perform initialization and does not rewrite existing data.

Foreground Versus Background Initialization

A foreground initialization is run from the BIOS using 3BM. It clears all existing data from the drives. Foreground initialization can take several hours, depending upon the size of the unit. After foreground initialization completes, you can start the operating system and units will perform at peak efficiency.

If immediate access to the unit is important, you can stop foreground initialization by pressing **Esc** and booting to the operating system. Background initialization will then start automatically within about 10 minutes. Background initialization does not write zeroes to the drives or harm your data, so you can partition, format, and use the unit safely. For the 9000 series, the unit is fully fault-tolerant while the initialization takes place. That is, if the array degrades before the initialization is complete, the data will remain intact.

When initializing is done after booting to the operating system, the process of initializing takes longer than it does if initialization is done by writing zeroes to the unit in the BIOS. Consequently, it will be a longer period of time until the performance of the unit is fully optimal.

Although you can use the unit while it is being initialized in the background, initialization does slow I/O performance until completed. You can adjust how much initialization will slow performance by setting the rate at which it

occurs. (For more information, see “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183.) You can also postpone initialization until a scheduled time. (For details, see “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184).



Note: Units that do not need to be immediately initialized for full performance will be automatically initialized using background initialization if they are ever verified. (Verification requires that the unit have been previously initialized.) This will not affect the data on the drives, and the units will perform normally, although performance will be slowed until the initialization and verification are completed.

Initialization of Different RAID Types

Information about initialization for each of the different RAID types is described below, and summarized in Table 10 on page 179.

Initialization of RAID 0 Units

RAID 0 units do not need to be initialized and are immediately available for use with full performance when created.

Initialization of RAID 5 and RAID 50 Units

Regardless of the size, all 9000-series RAID-5 and 50 arrays are fully fault tolerant upon creation. This is because these configurations use a specialized scheme for writing to the unit, which does not have to be valid to provide fault tolerance.

Performance of RAID 5 units with 5 or more disks, and RAID 50 units with 2 subunits of 5 or 6 disks will improve after the unit has been initialized. For these configurations, initialization begins automatically after you create them. If you create them in the 3BM utility, zeroes are written to all unit members. If you create them through 3DM, RAID 5 parity is calculated and written to disk, keeping any data in the unit intact.

RAID 5 units with 3 or 4 disks do not need to be initialized to have full performance upon creation. Similarly, RAID 50 units with a grouping of 3 or 4 do not need to be initialized, however RAID 50 with a grouping of 6 do need to be initialized for full performance.

Initialization of RAID 1 and RAID 10 Units

RAID 1 and RAID 10 units do not need to be initialized when they are created to be fault tolerant and are immediately available for use with full performance when created.

Initialization of RAID 1, RAID 10 will take place automatically the first time the unit is verified.

Initialization of a RAID 1 unit results in data from one disk (the disk on the lower channel number) being copied to the other disk. In RAID 10 units, data from one half of the unit is copied to the other half.

After the initialization, subsequent verifies to a RAID 1 or 10 unit check for data consistency by comparing the data from one drive (or set of drives) to the other drive (or set of drives).

Table 10: Initialization Requirements for Different RAID Configurations

Initialization Required for Highest Performance?	RAID Configurations
No	Single drive or hot spare
No	RAID 0 or RAID 1
No	RAID 1 RAID 10
No	RAID 5 with 3 or 4 disks RAID 50 with 6, 8, or 9 disks RAID 50 with 12 disks in 3 subunits of 4 RAID 50 with 12 disks in 4 subunits of 3 RAID 50 with 16 disks in 4 subunits of 4
Yes	RAID 5 with 5 or more disks RAID 50 with 10 disks in 2 subunits of 5 RAID 50 with 12 disks in 2 subunits of 6

Auto Initialization After Power Failure

The 3ware controller detects and handles power failures. This mechanism is intended to ensure that redundant units have consistent data and parity. When a redundant unit is unexpectedly shutdown, there is a possibility some data and parity may be inconsistent. For redundant units, if a unit or sub-unit is

detected to have been shutdown uncleanly, the unit or sub-unit will change its mode to either 'Initializing' or 'Verifying'.

3ware's auto-initialization feature determines if this is required. During driver startup, a flag is set that indicates that the driver loaded. Upon an orderly shutdown, the flag is rewritten, indicating that there was a clean shutdown. During the next system power cycle the firmware queries the flag. If there was a power failure, the flag will indicate that there was not a clean shutdown. This means that the data on the drives may not be correct.

When the initialization is complete, the unit is guaranteed to be redundant again. The initialization does not erase user data.

About Rebuilds

Fault tolerant RAID units provide data redundancy by duplicating information on multiple drives.

- RAID 1 and 10 units each use mirroring, where identical data is stored on two or more drives to protect against drive failure.
- RAID 5 and 50 units achieve fault tolerance by using a simple (exclusive OR) function to generate the parity data that is distributed on all drives.

When one of the drives in a fault-tolerant unit is removed, unplugged or fails on read or write requests, the unit is said to be "degraded." Rebuilding is the process by which the RAID unit is made fault tolerant again.

You can still read and write data from a degraded unit, but the unit will not be fault tolerant until it is rebuilt using the Rebuild feature.

In all cases, when a RAID unit becomes degraded, it is marked as such, and the drive(s) that failed are marked as **Not In Use** in the 3BM screens and **Degraded** in the 3DM pages.

If a hot spare is specified and a redundant unit degrades, an event notification is generated and the hot spare automatically replaces the failed drive in the redundant unit without user intervention. The rebuild process will automatically be launched as a background process at the next scheduled time. If scheduling is turned off, the rebuild process will start almost immediately (within a couple of minutes). If 3DM is running and E-mail notification is enabled, an event notification will be sent to specified users when the rebuild process is complete.

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, if Auto-Rebuild is enabled, other drives in addition to spares may be used to rebuild degraded units. If no spare is available, the firmware will attempt to rebuild the unit using first any available drives and then any failed drives. This allows you to insert a new drive to use in the rebuild process.

With the 3ware 9000 series controller, rebuilds on multiple units can take place simultaneously.

Rebuilding Units

About Verification

For the 3ware 9000 series, the verify feature combines verification of redundant units (confirming the validity of the redundant data) and media scans for non-redundant units. (3ware software for the 7000 and 8000 series provided separate features for verify and media scan.)

Verification is useful because it can provide early warning of a disk drive problem or failure. For example, if the verification process encounters many error locations, it may be an indication of an excessive number of grown defects on the drive. This allows you to replace drives before they fail.

Verifies can be performed through either 3BM (BIOS) or through 3DM. In addition, they can be scheduled to run at preferred times, through 3DM or through the CLI, or can be run automatically during the Verify schedule window, if scheduling and the Auto-verify feature are enabled.

For a RAID 1 or RAID 10 unit, a verify compares the data of one mirror with the other. For RAID 5 and RAID 50, a verify calculates RAID 5 parity and compares it to what is written on the disk drive.

Verification checks each sector on a drive. This is important, because day-to-day use of the media may leave many sectors on a drive unused or unchecked for long periods of time. This can result in errors occurring during user operation. Periodic verification of the media allows the disk drive firmware to take corrective actions on problem areas on the disk, minimizing the occurrence of uncorrectable read and write errors.

About Verifies of Non-Redundant Units

Verification of non-redundant units (single disks, JBODs, spares, and RAID 0 units) read each sector of a drive, sequentially. If a sector can't be read, it is flagged as unreadable, and the next time the controller writes to that location, the drive reallocates the data to a different sector.

About Verifies of Redundant Units

Verifies of redundant units also read each sector, working from lowest block to highest block. If verification cannot read data in a sector, dynamic sector repair is used to recover the lost data from the redundant drive or drives; this recovered data is written to the problem sector. This forces the drive to reallocate the defective sector with a good spare sector.

How Errors Are Handled

Verification makes use of the same error checking and error repair techniques used during ordinary use of drives configured through 3ware RAID controllers.

When verification encounters an error, the controller typically retries the command. If there are cable CRC errors, there may be multiple retries including downgrade of the UDMA mode. If the error persists and is unrepairable (e.g., ECC errors), an error notification is issued to indicate the problem. (See AEN “026h Drive ECC error reported” on page 232.)

If the disk drive is part of a redundant array that is in a redundant state (not DEGRADED or REBUILDING), then Dynamic Sector Repair automatically rewrites the redundant data to the error location to force the drive to reallocate the error location. A notification of repair is posted. The result is a restoration of drive and data integrity; the primary and redundant data are again both valid.

If the array is not redundant, a file-system check is recommended to correct the issue. If the errors persist and cannot be overwritten from a backup copy, perform a final incremental backup. You will need to replace the defective drive, recreate the array, and reinstall the data.

About Migration

Migration allows on-line units to be reconfigured. You can make these types of configuration changes:

- RAID level
- Unit capacity expansion
- Change to stripe size

RAID level migration and unit capacity expansion tasks can be done together or separately.

Migration tasks follow the same schedule as rebuild and initialization tasks.

Because of the controller and disk resources required during migration, when migration is active, it has priority over other background tasks. When migration starts, it will take the highest priority over rebuild, initialize and verify.

Once a unit is put into the migration state, it must be allowed to complete the process. While migrating, rebuilds or verifies to the unit are not permitted.

Migrate tasks are always done in the background, and can be initiated through either 3DM or the CLI. (Foreground migrations through 3BM are not supported.)

A unit being migrated can still be used (I/O still continues), however the performance will be affected while the migrating task is active. You can control how much affect this has on performance by setting the background task rate. For more information, see “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183.

Moving a Unit to Another Controller During Migration

Moving a unit to another controller while the unit is in the migration state is supported with one restriction. If the unit was in the middle of the migration process and the controller was shutdown uncleanly, the unit cannot be moved to another controller until the unit has recovered from the unclean shutdown.

For more information about migration, see “Changing An Existing Configuration” on page 151.

About Self-tests

Two self-tests can be set, to check whether UDMA Mode can be upgraded, and whether SMART thresholds have been exceeded.

Initially, these tests are set to run every 24 hours. You can change the schedule for when they are run, and you can disable the tests, if you prefer not have to have them performed. For more information, see “Selecting Self-tests to be Performed” on page 188.

Setting Background Task Rate

In 3DM, you can set the relative performance of background tasks (initializing, rebuilding, and verifying) in relation to normal I/O activity.

9000-series controllers show separate settings for Rebuild Rate and Verify Rate. (Initialization occurs at the Rebuild rate.) 7000- and 8000-series controllers show only one setting for Task Rate, which applies to both rebuild and verify rates.

Rebuild and verify tasks can be started manually or scheduled. For details about manually starting these processes, see “Rebuilding Units” on page 189 and “Verifying Units” on page 194. For details about scheduling rebuild, verify, and other tasks, see “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184.

To change the background task rate

- 1 Choose **Management > Controller Settings** from the menu bar.
- 2 In the **Background Task Rate** section of the Controller Settings Page, select one of the five radio buttons to indicate the relative task rate for Rebuild and Verify Tasks.

The furthest left buttons set the firmware to the fastest rebuild and verify settings. This means that maximum processing time will be given to rebuilds or verifies rather than I/O. The furthest right buttons set the firmware to the slowest rebuild and verify settings, giving maximum processing time to I/O.

After you select one of the radio buttons, the page refreshes, and a message at the top confirms the change you have made.

For more information about these settings, see the reference section, “Controller Settings Page” on page 93.

Scheduling Background Tasks

You can set up scheduling windows for when background tasks can occur, so that routine maintenance of storage media occurs at times that will be least likely to interfere with peak I/O times. By creating and using schedules, you can limit active rebuilding, verifying, and testing of units to times that are least disruptive.



Note: Initialization and migration operations follow the rebuild schedule.

Although rebuild/migrate, verify, and self-test tasks are scheduled separately, you set up the schedules for each in a similar way. You can perform the following scheduling tasks:

- Viewing Current Task Schedules
- Turning On or Off Use of a Task Schedule
- Removing a Task Schedule
- Adding a New Task Schedule Slot
- Selecting Self-tests to be Performed

Tip: If you want to change a scheduled task, you first remove the scheduled item and then add it back with the desired day, time, and duration.

Sometimes you may want to manually start rebuild and verify tasks. For information about how to do so, see the procedures under “Rebuilding Units” on page 189 and “Verifying Units” on page 194.

You can also set the rate at which background tasks are performed compared to I/O tasks. For more information, see “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183.

For more information about background tasks themselves, see “About Background Tasks” on page 177.

Prioritization of Background Tasks

Rebuilding preempts verify operations. If a unit requires rebuilding, that process will take place before the unit is verified.

Migration receives higher priority than all other background tasks.

3ware 9000-series RAID controllers can work on multiple units at the same time. This means that if you have both a redundant unit and a non-redundant unit, the verification of the redundant unit and the media scan of the non-redundant unit will occur at the same time.

Scheduled Task Duration

If a rebuild completes within a scheduled time, it will not start over come next schedule time block, unless someone degrades the unit and starts another rebuild on the unit in the meantime.

Rebuilds occur at the scheduled time when a drive degrades and there is a hot spare, or when a rebuild has been manually requested. If a rebuild does not complete in the scheduled time block, it will continue where it left off at the next schedule time block.

Similarly, if a verify operation does not complete in the scheduled time block, it will continue where it left off at the next scheduled time block.

Viewing Current Task Schedules

You can see the current schedules for background tasks on the **Scheduling** page.

To view the current task schedule

- 1 Choose **Management > Schedule** from the menu bar.

The Scheduling Page appears, showing the schedule for Rebuild Tasks. (Migration and initialization tasks follow the Rebuild Task schedule.)

- To view Verify Tasks or Self-test Tasks, select it from the drop-down list at the top of the page.

Turning On or Off Use of a Task Schedule

Turning on the schedule for Rebuild/Migrate and Verify tasks forces rebuilds, migrates, and verifies to be performed only during the time specified by the schedule. If the schedule is not turned on, rebuilds, migration, initialization, and verify can happen whenever they are required, are manually started, or if the Auto-verify policy is enabled for a particular unit (verifies only).

There may be times when you want to disable scheduled rebuild/migrate or verify tasks, so that you can rebuild, migrate, or verify a unit right away, without waiting for the next scheduled time. In this case, you can disable the schedule, as described below.



Note: When you first use 3DM, daily schedules exist with 24 hour duration—that is, the schedule is for “all the time.” Until you change these 24-hour daily schedule, enabling the schedule will not have any direct effect.

You can easily disable a current Verify or Rebuild schedule without deleting the schedule itself.

To turn on or off use of the current Verify or Rebuild task schedule

- 1 Choose **Management > Schedule** from the menu bar.
The Scheduling Page appears, showing the schedule for Rebuild/Migrate Tasks.
- 2 To view Verify Tasks, select it from the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 In the Schedule Rebuild Tasks section, select the appropriate setting: **Follow Schedule** or **Ignore Schedule**.

The illustration below shows this setting for the rebuild task schedule.

Schedule Rebuild Tasks (Controller ID 2)		
Scheduled Rebuilds		
<input type="radio"/> Follow Schedule <input checked="" type="radio"/> Ignore Schedule		
Day	Time	Duration (hours)
<input type="checkbox"/> 1, Sunday	12:00am	24
<input type="checkbox"/> 2, Monday	12:00am	24

Note: Self-test schedules cannot be turned off in this way. To disable self-tests you must either remove all schedule times, or uncheck the tests listed in the **Tasks** column. For more information, see “Selecting Self-tests to be Performed” on page 188.

Removing a Task Schedule

By default, daily task schedules are defined, each starting at 12:00 am and running for 24 hours.

A maximum of seven schedules can be defined. When seven schedules are shown for any of the tasks, you must remove a schedule before you can add another.

To remove a task schedule

- 1 Choose **Management > Schedule** from the menu bar.
The Scheduling Page appears, showing the schedule for Rebuild/Migrate Tasks.
- 2 To view Verify Tasks or Self-test Tasks, select it from the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 Select the checkbox next to the schedule(s) you want to remove.
- 4 Click the **Remove Checked** button.

The page refreshes, and the selected schedule(s) are removed. You can now add another schedule.

Adding a New Task Schedule Slot

When you add a rebuild/migrate or verify task schedule, you specify the day of the week, time, and duration for the task. For self-test schedules, you specify day and time, but not duration. (Duration is not required for self-tests.)

Depending on the schedule and system workload, background tasks may require more than one scheduled duration to complete.

To add a task schedule slot

- 1 Choose **Management > Schedule** from the menu bar.
The Scheduling Page appears, showing the schedule for Rebuild/Migrate Tasks.
- 2 To view Verify Tasks or Self-test Tasks, select it from the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 Scroll to the section of the Scheduling page that shows the task you want to add.
- 4 In the fields at the bottom of the section, select the Day, Time, and Duration for the task.



The screenshot shows a section of the Scheduling Page. At the top left is a button labeled 'Remove Checked'. Below it is a button labeled 'Add New Schedule'. To the right of the 'Add New Schedule' button are three dropdown menus: 'Day' with 'Sunday' selected, 'Time' with '12:00am' selected, and 'Duration' with '1' selected.

- 5 Click the **Add New Slot** button.
The page refreshes and the new schedule is added to the list.



Note: The scheduled tasks can be added in any order. For example a new task scheduled for Tuesday (slot-2) will preempt the task originally scheduled for Wednesday (slot-1).

Selecting Self-tests to be Performed

Two self-tests can be set, to check whether UDMA Mode can be upgraded, and whether SMART thresholds have been exceeded. (For more information about these self-tests, see the 3DM Reference section, “Scheduling Page” on page 98.)

Initially, these tests are set to run every 24 hours. You can change the schedule for when they are run, and you can disable the tests, if you prefer not have to have them performed.



Note: These tasks will only be run during scheduled times if they are checked in the **Schedule Self-tests** section of the Scheduling page. If neither of the tasks is checked, self-tests will never run, even if you have scheduled time slots set.

To select self-tests to be performed

- 1 Choose **Management > Schedule** from the menu bar.
The Scheduling Page appears, showing the schedule for Rebuild Tasks.
- 2 Select Self-test Tasks from the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 Check the boxes next to the self-tests you want to be performed.

Schedule Self-tests (Controller ID 2)		
Day	Time	Tasks (applies to all schedule items)
<input type="checkbox"/> 1. Sunday	12:00am	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Upgrade UDMA mode
<input type="checkbox"/> 2. Monday	12:00am	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check S.M.A.R.T. Thresholds

To disable self-tests

Unlike scheduling of rebuilds and verifies, scheduling of self-tests is always enabled.

To disable self-tests you must either remove all schedule times, or uncheck the tests listed in the **Tasks** column.

Rebuilding Units

If a hot spare is specified and a redundant unit degrades, an event notification is generated and the hot spare dynamically replaces the failed drive in the redundant unit without user intervention. The rebuild process will automatically be launched as a background process at the next scheduled time. If scheduling is turned off, the rebuild process will start almost immediately (within a few minutes). If 3DM is running and E-mail notification is enabled, an event notification will be sent to specified users when the rebuild process starts and when it completes.

For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, if Auto-Rebuild is enabled, the firmware will attempt to rebuild a degraded unit with an available drive or a failed drive.

If desired, you can manually replace the drive, rescan the controller, and start the rebuild process.

Manual rebuilds can be started from either 3BM or 3DM, although the rebuild itself only happens when the operating system is running.

If multiple drives are faulted in a RAID 10 configuration, the drives are rebuilt simultaneously. In a 4-drive RAID 10 configuration, up to two drives can be rebuilt. In a 6-drive configuration, up to three drives can be rebuilt. In an 8-drive configuration, up to four drives can be rebuilt. In a 12-drive configuration, up to six drives can be rebuilt.



Note: If both drives in a RAID 10 mirror set are faulted, the data is not recoverable. Up to half of the drives in a RAID 10 unit can become defective and still have the user data retained, as long as the failed drives are only half of each mirrored pair.

A RAID 50 unit can also sustain multiple drive failures, as long there is only one failed drive in each RAID 5 set.

When a RAID 5 is running in Degraded mode, the missing data is reconstructed from all non-degraded drives.



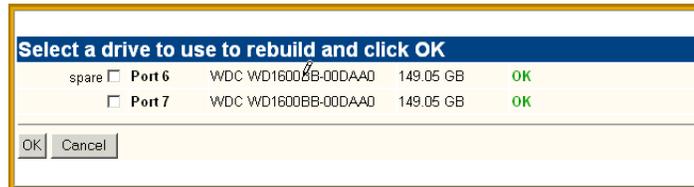
Note: If a rebuild fails, check the Alarms page for the reason. If there was an ECC error on the source disk, you can force the rebuild to continue by checking the Overwrite ECC Error policy on the Controller Settings page in 3DM and then running Rebuild again. This will cause uncorrectable blocks to be rewritten, but the data may be incorrect. It is recommended that you execute a file system check when the rebuild completes.

Rebuilding a Unit Through 3DM

When a drive on a unit degrades, you replace it with an available drive and then rebuild the unit. For units on 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, if Auto-Rebuild is enabled and a drive is available, starting the rebuild is optional as it will start automatically.

To rebuild a unit through 3DM

- 1 If necessary, add a new drive to be used to replace the failed drive. (For details, see “Adding a Drive through 3DM” on page 168.)
- 2 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 3 In the **Unit Maintenance** section of the Maintenance Page, select the degraded unit and click the **Rebuild Unit** button.
- 4 When a dialog box displays available drives, select the drive you want to replace the degraded drive and click **OK**.



- 5 If the degraded unit has more than one degraded drive (for example, a RAID 10 where both mirrored pairs each have a degraded drive), repeat steps 3 and 4.

If rebuild scheduling is not enabled on the **Scheduling** page, the rebuild process begins almost immediately in the background. If rebuild scheduling is enabled, the unit will not start actively rebuilding until the next scheduled time.



Note: If you need to cancel a rebuild, you can do so by using the **Remove Drive** link on the Maintenance page to remove the drive from the unit.

Rebuilding Units through 3BM

When a RAID unit becomes degraded, it is marked as such, and the drive(s) that failed are marked as **Not In Use** in the 3BM screens.

Figure 71, shows an example of how a degraded RAID 5 unit appears in 3BM.

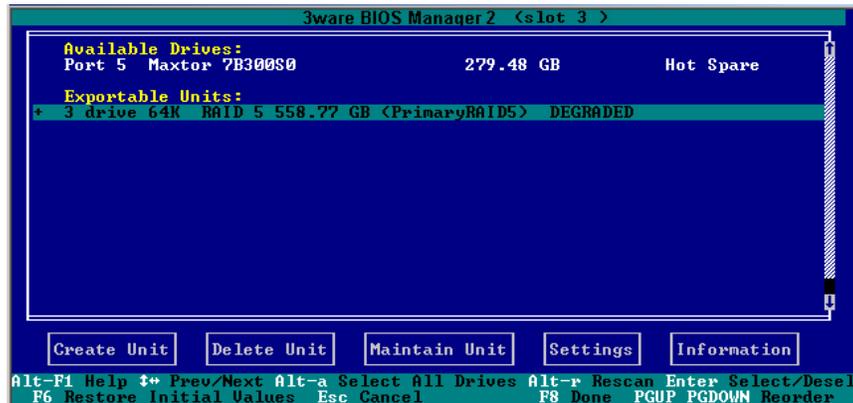


Figure 71. Degraded RAID 5 Array to be Rebuilt

You can start the rebuild of a degraded unit manually in 3BM, or you can let the system boot and allow the rebuild to take place automatically.

- 2 Press **Tab** to select the degraded unit and press **Enter** to select it.
- 3 **Tab** to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.
- 4 Select **Rebuild** from the pop-up menu and press **Enter**.



Figure 73. Rebuild Option on the Maintain Menu

The Rebuild Disk Array screen displays.

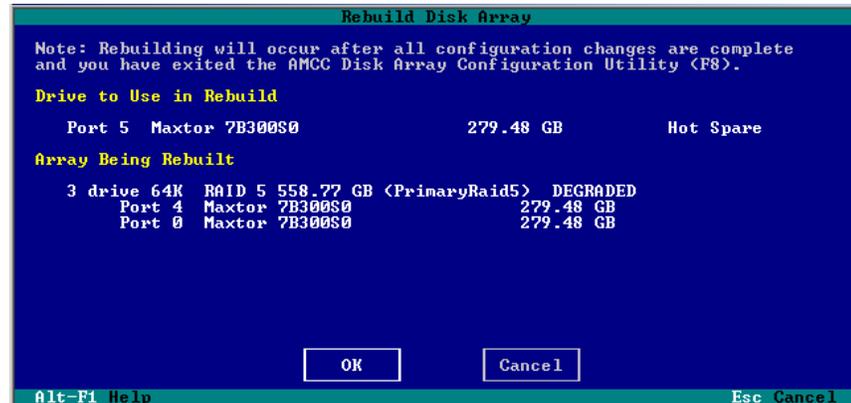


Figure 74. Rebuild Disk Array Screen

- 5 Press **Enter** to select the **OK** button to continue.
You are returned to the main screen; “Rebuilding” appears next to the unit you selected.
- 6 Press **F8** to save your changes and exit 3BM.
The unit will begin rebuilding about ten minutes after the operating system finishes loading and the 3ware driver has loaded.

Cancelling a Rebuild and Restarting It with a Different Drive

When you start a rebuild from 3BM, you cannot cancel from within the 3BM interface. However, if you have hot-swap carriers, you can remove and replace the drive, rescan the controller (Alt-R), and then select a new drive to be used in the rebuild. You can also boot the operating system, launch 3DM, and cancel a rebuild by using the **Remove Drive** link on the Maintenance page.

If you do not have hot-swap carriers and do not want to boot the operating system and launch 3DM, you can also cancel a rebuild by powering down the system, physically removing a drive, and installing another one that you want to use. Then when you start 3BM, the unit will appear as degraded and you can rebuild it, using the steps described under “Rebuilding Units through 3BM” on page 191.



Note: If you want to pause the rebuild process through 3DM, you can do so by setting or changing the rebuild schedule on the Scheduling page. If you set a schedule for rebuilds that does not include the current time, the rebuild process will pause.

Verifying Units

For redundant units, verify checks the redundancy of the unit. For example it will check parity for a RAID 5 or check data consistency for a RAID 1. If the unit you checked is not a redundant unit, verify performs a surface scan of the media. During verification, I/O continues normally, but with a slight performance loss, depending on your verify rate setting. For more details about how verification works, see “About Verification” on page 181. For details about verify rates, see “Setting Background Task Rate” on page 183.

For 9000 series controllers, if the verify unit process determines that the mirrored drives are not identical or the parity is not correct, the error is corrected. For RAID 1 and 10, this involves copying the miscompared data from the lower port(s) to the higher port(s) of the mirror. For RAID 5 this involves recalculating and rewriting the RAID 5 parity that was incorrect. AEN 36 (“Verify detected and fixed data/parity mismatch”) is posted to the Alarms page.

When this occurs for 7000/8000 series controllers, AEN 36 (“Verify detected and fixed data/parity mismatch”) is logged and the entire unit is initialized. For RAID 1 and 10, initialization involves copying the data from the lower port(s) to the higher port(s) of the mirror. For RAID 5 this involves recalculating and rewriting the RAID 5 parity for the entire unit. If the unit is

not redundant, a file-system check is recommended to correct the issue. If the errors persist and cannot be overwritten from a backup copy, perform a final incremental backup. You will need to replace the defective drive, recreate the unit, and reinstall the data.



Note: If the unit has not previously been initialized and you manually select **Verify Unit** in either 3BM or 3DM, the initialization process starts.

Verification of units can be done automatically, on a schedule, or can be started manually, as described below. For information about scheduling, see “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184.

You can manually start a verify through either 3DM or 3BM.

To verify a unit through 3DM

- 1 In 3DM, choose **Management > Maintenance**.
- 2 In the **Unit Maintenance** section of the Maintenance Page, select the unit you want to verify and click **Verify Unit**.

3DM puts the selected unit in verifying mode. If verify scheduling is not enabled on the Scheduling page, the verification process begins almost immediately. If verify scheduling is enabled, the unit will not start actively verifying until the next scheduled time.

A **Stop Verify** link appears next to the unit on the Maintenance page. If you need to stop the verify process, use this link. (If initialization starts because the unit had not previously been initialized, it cannot be halted, so no **Stop Verify** link appears.)

To verify a unit through 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, select the unit by highlighting it and pressing **Enter**.
An asterisk appears in the left-most column to indicate that it is selected.
- 2 **Tab** to the **Maintain Unit** button and press **Enter**.

- 3 On the pop-up menu, select **Verify** and press **Enter**.

Verification of the selected unit starts immediately.

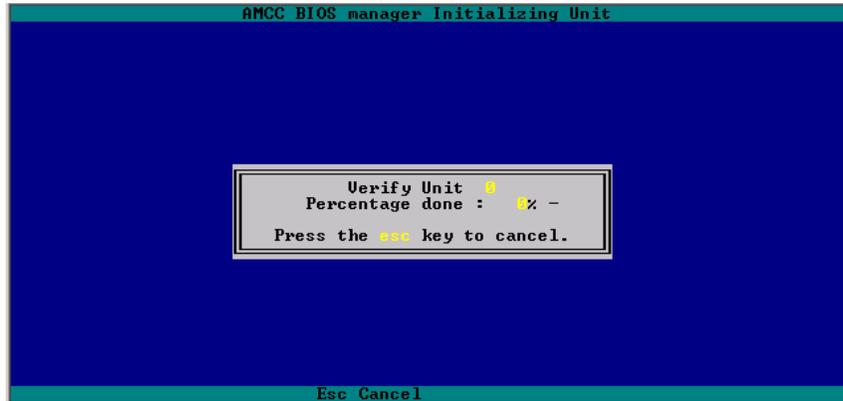


Figure 75. Verifying a Unit



Notes:

If a unit that requires initialization has not previously been initialized, selecting Verify Unit starts initialization. This is because fault-tolerant units cannot be verified until after they are initialized.

If the unit is already in a state of rebuild, initialization, or verification, the unit cannot be verified in 3BM. You must boot the system and let the task finish in the background.

Locating a Drive by Blinking Its LED

When you have drives installed in a supported chassis with an LED display and have connected the I²C connector on the 3ware RAID controller to the chassis, you can locate individual drives by blinking their associated LED.



Note: Drive Locate will be supported by chassis vendors. This feature requires a chassis with a Chassis Control Unit (CCU). The CCU will also support the monitoring of fan speed, temperature sensors, door lock, and so forth, depending on the level of chassis vendor support. Check the 3ware support web site for future updates on a list of chassis vendors that support the CCU, as they become available.

You can issue the command to blink the LED through 3DM and through the CLI. For details about using the CLI, see *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

To blink the LED for a drive

- 1 Choose **Information > Drive Information** from the main menu in 3DM.
- 2 On the Drive Information page, identify the drive you want to physically locate.
- 3 Check the box in the **Blink** column.
The LED on the chassis begins blinking.
- 4 When you are finished working with the drive and no longer need to see the LED, return to this page and uncheck the **Blink** box.

Maintaining Your Controller

This section contains instructions for how to perform tasks that help you maintain your controller, including:

- Determining the Current Version of Your 3ware Driver
- Updating the Driver and Firmware
- Viewing Battery Information
- Testing Battery Capacity

Determining the Current Version of Your 3ware Driver

You can view controller and driver information in several different ways:

- Using 3DM 2 you can see both the driver and firmware versions (see the “Controller Summary Page” on page 84)
- Using 3BM you can see the firmware version (see “Displaying Controller Information” on page 63)
- Using the CLI you can see both the driver and firmware versions (see *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*)

Under Linux, you can also type the following command if you have a 2.4 kernel or earlier:

```
cat /proc/scsi/3w-9xxx/0*
```

where the asterisk (*) represents controller number and “9xxx” represents the version of the controller. For example:

```
cat /proc/scsi/3w-9xxx/0
```

If you have a 2.6 kernels with sysfs, type the following command:

```
cat /sys/class/scsi_host/<hostid>/stats
```

where <hostid> is usually host0, unless other SCSI devices are available, in which case it may be host1 or higher.

If you have a 2.6 kernel without sysfs, type the following command:

```
dmesg | grep 3w
```

(dmesg can also be used with earlier kernel versions.)

Under Windows, you can follow the first 8 steps under “Updating the 3ware Driver Under Windows XP” on page 207.

You can also use the 3ware Command Line Interface to check the version. For more information, see *3ware 9000 Series Serial ATA RAID Controller CLI Guide*.

Updating the Driver and Firmware

You can download the latest drivers and firmware from the 3ware website, at www.3ware.com.



Note: Information in this section applies to updating drivers and firmware for the 9550SX and 9590SE controllers. The 3ware website also allows you to download drivers for other 3ware controller models and associated release notes.

For Windows, the firmware and driver can be installed from the same download. When you run the utility, you can choose to update both the driver and the firmware, or only the driver.

For Linux and FreeBSD, updating the driver and updating the firmware are done separately. You can download them individually from the website.



Note: For Linux, do not use the driver from the external Linux distribution as it is older than the currently supported driver. Instead, use the driver from the 3ware CD or from the 3ware web site.

To download the driver or firmware

- 1 On the 3ware website (www.3ware.com), navigate to **Service and Support > Software Downloads**.
- 2 Select the product and release desired.
- 3 Select Driver or Firmware (as appropriate) as the item to download.
- 4 Select the Operating System you are using.
- 5 Click **Next**.

- 6 When details about the download you requested appear, click the link for the item you want to download.

Depending on the item you selected, you may see either .zip (for Windows) or .tgz (for Linux/FreeBSD) files to download.

Note: If using Winzip or another Windows utility to extract the Linux file, use the .zip version instead of the .tgz version. Otherwise the files will not be compatible with Linux.

- 7 Read and agree to the license agreement that appears.
- 8 Click **Save** to save the file to disk.
- 9 Uncompress the file to extract the driver or firmware files to a diskette or to a local directory.
- 10 Turn to the driver section for your operating system, below:
 - Windows, on page 207
 - RedHat Linux, on page 213
 - SuSE Linux, on page 214
 - FreeBSD, on page 216
 - Updating the firmware for Linux or FreeBSD, page 216

To make a driver diskette

If you want to create a driver diskette, extract the driver files to a floppy in step 9 above. Refer to the user manual for your operating system for more details.

Updating the 3ware Driver and Firmware Under Windows

You can update both the driver and the firmware under Windows, using the utility 3wUpdate.exe. This utility is included with the driver files when you download them.

If you only need to update the driver, you can either use the update utility as described below, or you can update it through the Windows Device Manager, as described under “Updating the 3ware Driver Under Windows XP” on page 207.

When you use the update utility, you bypass the device driver screens that you see when you update just the driver through Windows Device Manager.



Note: At the end of this process, you may need to restart the system. Restarting is always required if you update the firmware. In addition, if you boot from a unit on a 3ware RAID controller, updating the driver will require that you restart the system.

To update the 3ware driver and firmware using the update utility

- 1 Download and extract the driver files, as described on page 200.
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware driver.
- 3 Log in to your system as system administrator.
- 4 Locate the folder that contains the driver files you extracted in step 1.
- 5 Double-click on the file `3wUpdate.exe`.

You see a progress dialog box while the update utility checks your system for the driver and firmware versions presently installed.

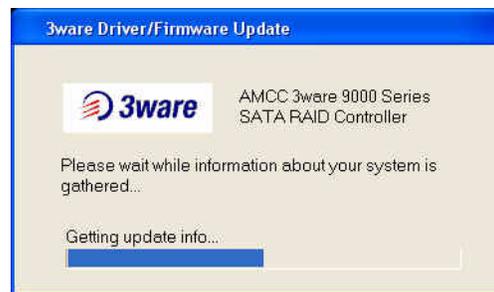
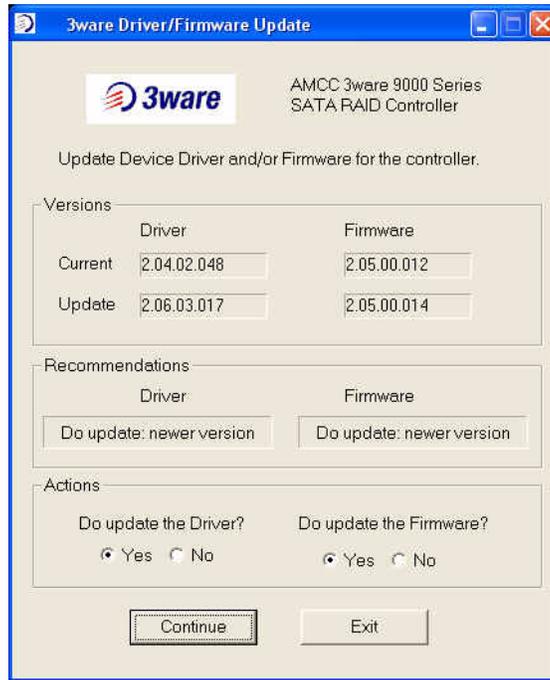


Figure 76. Update Utility Progress Dialog (System Check)

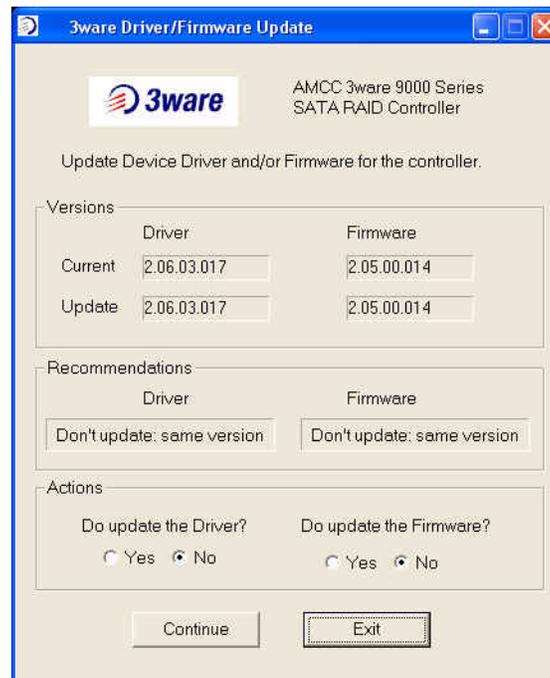
When the 3ware Driver/Firmware Update dialog box appears, it shows available updates for the device driver and for the firmware.



The updater tells you whether newer updates are available, and makes recommendations for whether you should update.

Figure 77. Update Utility Showing Available Drivers

If either your driver or firmware are current, the screen reflects that.



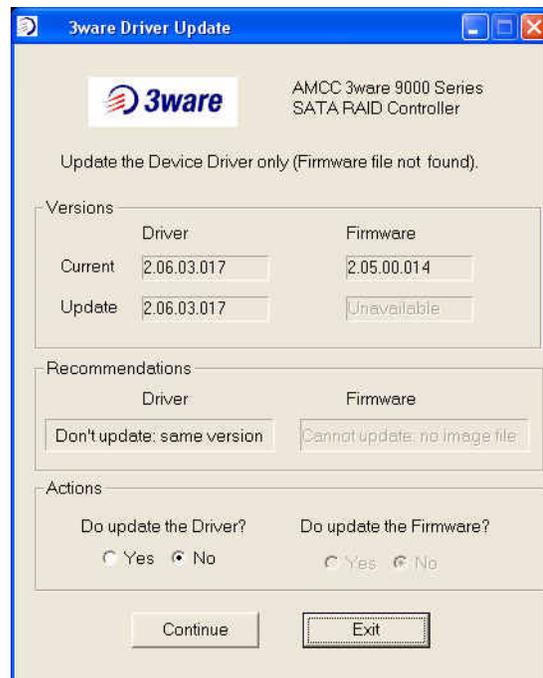
In this example, both the driver and firmware are already current on the system, so the recommendation is not to update either one.

Figure 78. Update Utility Showing Drivers Already Current

If the firmware image is not found with the driver files, you will see an error message, and the 3ware Driver/Firmware Update dialog box will show only the Driver as available.



Figure 79. Error Message When the Firmware Image is Missing



Only the driver is available, because the firmware image was not found.

Figure 80. Update Utility Showing Only Driver Available



Note: If you have multiple controllers in your system, your screen will look slightly different, so that you can update the firmware for one or all controllers. For details, see “Using the Update Utility With Multiple Controllers” on page 206.

- 6 In the Action section of the dialog, make any changes to what will be updated and click **Continue** to install your selections.

During the update, the driver installs on your local drive. The firmware will first download and then will flash a new image to the controller.

You will see either one or two progress dialog boxes, depending on what is being installed. Progress is shown during:

- Driver installation
- Firmware download and flashing of the controller



Warning: Do not power off the system while the firmware is being flashed. Doing so will render the controller unusable.

- 7 If a dialog box prompts you to restart your computer, click **Yes** to do so. (If you were working from a driver diskette, be sure to remove the floppy diskette before Windows reboots.)



- 8 If the driver you are installing is unsigned, you will receive a message to that effect. To complete the installation with an unsigned driver, click **OK**.
- 9 If a final message box confirms that the process is complete, click **OK**. (This message appears if you do not need to restart your computer.)



Using the Update Utility With Multiple Controllers

When your system has multiple 3ware RAID controllers installed, the update utility lets you update the firmware on any or all of the installed controllers.

To update the firmware on multiple controllers

- 1 Follow steps 1 through 5 above, under “Updating the 3ware Driver and Firmware Under Windows” on page 201.

When the 3ware Driver/Firmware Update dialog box appears, it lists the number of controllers in your system, shows available updates for the device driver, and available firmware updates for the first controller.

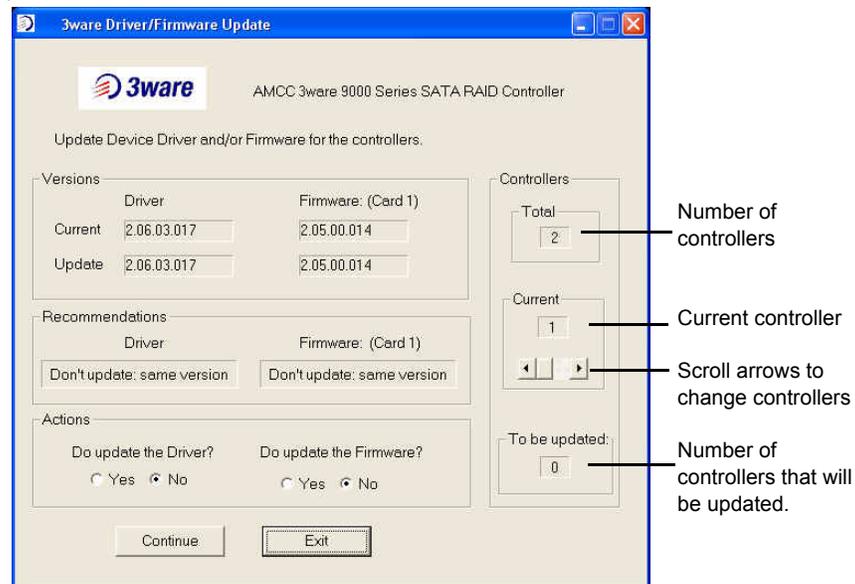


Figure 81. Update Utility Showing Available Drivers

- 2 Use the scroll arrows under “Current” Controller to see firmware recommendations for each controller on your system.
- 3 For each controller, review the option for whether the firmware should be updated, and change it if appropriate.
- 4 Continue with step 6 above, in the procedure “Updating the 3ware Driver and Firmware Under Windows.”

Updating the 3ware Driver Under Windows XP

If you prefer, you can update the 3ware driver through the Windows Device Driver Manager, instead of using the Update Utility described above.

To update the 3ware driver under Windows XP

(Note that during this process, you will step through driver installation wizards twice.)

- 1 Download and extract the driver files, as described on page 200
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware driver.
- 3 Log in to your system as system administrator.
- 4 From the **Start** menu, open the **Control Panel** window.
- 5 In the **Control Panel** window, double-click on the **System** icon.
- 6 Click on the **Hardware** tab and then click on the **Device Manager** tab.
- 7 Open the **SCSI and RAID Controllers** selection.
- 8 Locate and double-click on the applicable **3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller**. The **3ware 9000 Series ATA RAID Controller Properties** dialog box appears.
- 9 Click the **Driver** tab (Figure 82).



Figure 82. 3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller Properties Dialog

- 10 Click the **Update Driver...** button.
- 11 If your system has Windows XP Service Pack 2, the first screen asks whether you want to connect to Windows Update.
Select "No, not this time" and click **Next**.



Figure 83. Windows XP Service Pack 2 Windows Update Query

- When you reach the **Hardware Update Wizard** screen shown in Figure 84, select “Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)” and then click **Next**.

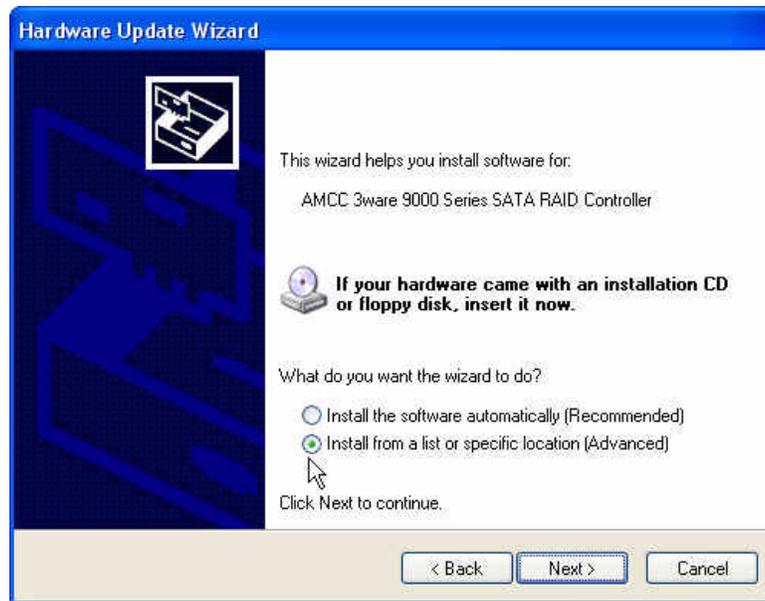


Figure 84. Upgrade/Install Device Driver Wizard

- At the next screen (Figure 85) choose “Don’t search. I will choose the driver to install” and click **Next**.

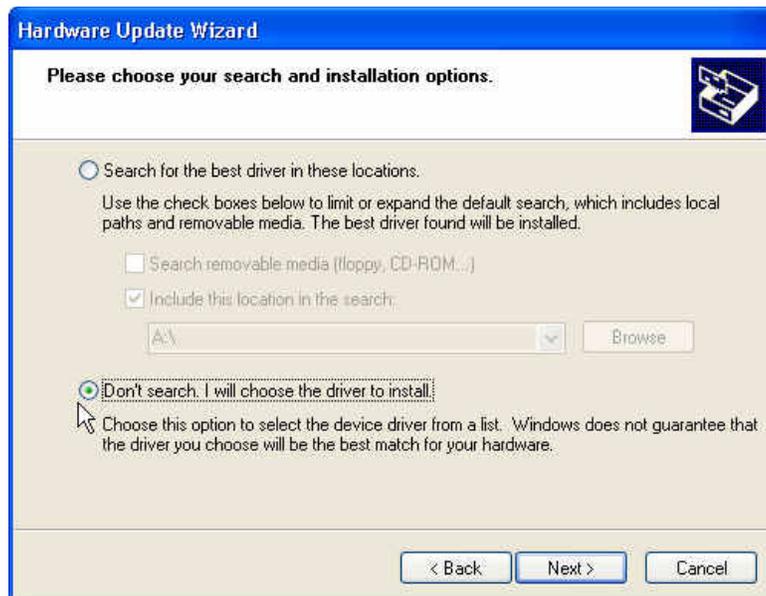


Figure 85. Search for Driver Screen

- When the **Select the Device Driver** screen appears (Figure 86), click the **Have Disk...** button.



Figure 86. Select the Device Driver Screen

- When the **Install from Disk** dialog box appears (Figure 87), enter the correct path name to the driver. If you created a driver diskette, insert it now. (The path will be A: if you are using a diskette in the A drive.)

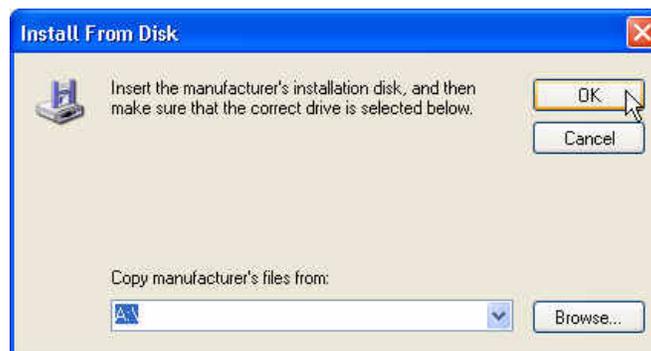


Figure 87. Install From Disk Dialog Box

- When the **Select the Device Driver** dialog box reappears, select the appropriate driver (Figure 88) and click **Next**.

Be sure to select the correct driver name, otherwise the driver upgrade will not be successful.



Figure 88. Select a Device Driver

The wizard begins installing the driver. You will see a progress box during installation.

- 17 If the **Digital Signature Not Found** screen appears, click **Yes** to continue and follow the instructions to complete the driver installation.
- 18 When the **Completing the Hardware Update Wizard** screen appears, click **Finish**.
- 19 If you are prompted to restart the system, do so.

Shortly after clicking **Finish**, or after the machine reboots, the first screen of the Hardware Update Wizard appears again, informing you that Windows has found new hardware.

If you are using Windows XP Service Pack 2, the screen asks whether you want to connect to Windows Update (Figure 89).



Figure 89. Found New Hardware Screen

- 20 Choose “No, not this time” and click **Next**.

At the next screen, leave the selection as “Install the software automatically.” Click **Next** and follow the prompts on the screen.

- 21 When the second **Completing the Found New Hardware** screen appears, click **Finish**.



Figure 90. Completing Found New Hardware Wizard

Updating the 3ware Driver Under Red Hat

The following steps describe how to update the 3ware driver under Red Hat.

To update the 3ware driver under Red Hat

- 1 Download and extract the driver, as described on page 200.
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware driver.
- 3 Change the directory to the location with the extracted driver.
- 4 Copy the files to the appropriate directory.

(In the commands below, replace <version> with the applicable Red Hat version, such as ws3_x86, and replace <kernel> with the applicable kernel, for example 2.4.20-8)

Note: The name of the module you will copy (3w-9xxx.*) varies, depending on the kernel; however you will always copy it to a file named 3w-9xxx.o for 2.4 kernels, or 3w-9xxx.ko for 2.6 kernels

For Red Hat Uniprocessor

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.o /lib/modules/  
<kernel>/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.o
```

For Red Hat SMP

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.smp /lib/modules/  
<kernel>/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.o
```

For Red Hat Bigmem

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.big /lib/modules/  
<kernel>/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.o
```

For Red Hat Hugemem

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.hug /lib/modules/  
<kernel>/drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.o
```

- 5 **For 2.4 Kernels**, add the following line to

```
/etc/modules.conf:  
alias scsi_hostadapter 3w-9xxx.o
```

For 2.6 Kernels, add the following line to

```
/etc/modprobe.conf.  
alias scsi_hostadapter 3w-9xxx.ko
```

- 6 Complete the upgrade by upgrading the initial ramdisk.

Change the directory to the boot directory:

```
cd /boot
```

Run mkinitrd by entering the following:

(In the commands below, replace <kernel> with the applicable kernel, for example 2.4.20-8)

For Red Hat Uniprocessor

```
mkinitrd -v -f initrd-<kernel>.img <kernel>
```

For Red Hat SMP

```
mkinitrd -v -f initrd-<kernel>smp.img <kernel>smp
```

For Red Hat Bigmem

```
mkinitrd -v -f initrd-<kernel>bigmem.img <kernel>bigmem
```

For Red Hat Hugemem

```
mkinitrd -v -f initrd-<kernel>hugmem.img <kernel>hugmem
```

- 7 If you are using lilo, run lilo to update to the boot loader.

You should see a printout of kernels that are able to boot on this system after running lilo.

Updating the 3ware Driver Under SuSE

The following steps describe how to update the 3ware driver under SuSE.



Note: Pre-compiled, tested, and supported drivers are no longer available for older SuSE releases using the 2.4 kernel. The source code is still available (for a limited time) if a newer driver is still needed. Check the release notes for more details regarding supported operating systems.

To update the 3ware driver under SuSE

- 1 Download and extract the driver, as described on page 200.
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware driver.
- 3 Change the directory to the location with the extracted driver.
- 4 Copy the files to the appropriate directory.

(In the commands below, replace <version> with applicable SuSE version, such as su91)

Replace <kernel> with applicable kernel (i.e.: 2.6.21-4GB)

For SuSE Uniprocessor (2.6 kernels)

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.ko /lib/modules/<kernel>/drivers/scsi
```

For SuSE SMP (2.6 kernels)

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.smp /lib/modules/<kernel>/kernel/  
drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

For SuSE high memory systems (2.6 kernels)

```
cp <version>/3w-9xxx.big /lib/modules/<kernel>/kernel/  
drivers/scsi/3w-9xxx.ko
```

- 5 Run `/sbin/depmod -a`
- 6 Make sure the file `/lib/modules/<kernel string>/modules.dep` contains an entry for `3w-9xxx`. If not, add it after the `3w-xxxx` entry.
- 7 Complete the upgrade by upgrading the initial ramdisk. (Skip to step 10 if you prefer to use `insmod 3w-9xxx.o`, instead.)

Make sure the file `/etc/sysconfig/kernel` contains the following line:

```
INITRD_MODULES="3w-9xxx"
```



Note: Other modules may be listed before or after `3w-9xxx` depending on the installation. You may see entries like `reiserfs`, `ext3` or `scsi_mod`. Leave these entries alone, if present, as the system may need them to boot properly.

- 8 Run `mkinitrd`.
- 9 If you are using `lilo`, use `lilo` to update to the boot loader.
You should see a printout of kernels that are able to boot on this system after running `lilo`.
- 10 Reboot, if booted from the 3ware controller. Otherwise, continue with step 11.
The driver is now updated.
- 11 Stop the current driver module, if loaded:

```
rmmod 3w-9xxx
```
- 12 Load the new driver module:

```
modprobe 3w-9xxx
```

If the new driver fails to load properly, confirm that you used correct driver. If your kernel or SuSE version is not supported, you will need to compile your own driver. For more information, see knowledgebase article 14546 (<http://www.3ware.com/KB/article.aspx?id=14546>).

Updating the 3ware Driver Under FreeBSD

The following steps describe how to update the 3ware driver under FreeBSD.

To update the 3ware driver under FreeBSD

- 1 Download and extract the driver, as described on page 200.
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware driver.
- 3 Change the directory to the location with the extracted driver.
- 4 Copy the files to the appropriate directory.
For FreeBSD 4.x, copy the driver into `/modules`
For FreeBSD 5.x, copy the driver into `/boot/kernel.`
- 5 Load the driver

```
kldload twa.ko
```

If units are present, you should see unit information in the system log (usually, `/var/log/messages`).
- 6 If you wish to load the driver automatically every time the system is rebooted, add the line `'twa_load="YES"'` to the file `/boot/loader.conf`

Updating the Firmware Under Linux and FreeBSD

The following steps describe how to update the firmware under Linux and FreeBSD. The PROM images that are installed when you update the firmware include any 3BM, A-chip, P-chip, and BBU firmware updates. For example, in release 9.3.0.4, the new Boot Volume Size feature is included.

To update the firmware under Linux and FreeBSD

- 1 Download and extract the firmware, as described on page 200.
- 2 Backup any critical data prior to updating the 3ware firmware.
- 3 Change the directory to the location with the extracted files, which include `tw_update`.

4 Run the tw_update utility.

For the 9590SE and the 9550SX, use:

```
./tw_update fw=/mnt/fw/9550sx/prom0006.img
```

For the 9500S, use

```
./tw_update fw=/mnt/fw/9500S/promx566.img
```

The utility shows the version of the driver and firmware included in the utility, the versions currently installed on your controller, and recommends whether to upgrade the firmware or not.

Warning: We strongly recommend backing up your data before updating the firmware. Updating the firmware can render the device driver and/or management tools incompatible. It is recommended to have a copy of current firmware image for rollbacks.

Examining compatibility data from firmware image and /c0 ...

New-Firmware	Current-Firmware	Current-Driver	Current-API
FE9X 3.0x.xx.xxx	FE9X 3.0x.xx.xxx	2.xx.xx.xxx	2.xx.xx.xxx

Both API and Driver are compatible with the new firmware.
Recommendation: proceed to update.

Given the above recommendation...
Do you want to continue ? Y|N [N]: y

5 If the firmware is newer and the recommendation is to proceed, type `y` and press Enter.

```
Downloading the firmware from file /mnt/fw/9550sx/  
prom0006.img ... Done.
```

6 Reboot your system to flash the firmware upgrade.

Viewing Battery Information

The Battery Backup Unit (BBU) is an add-on card that can be attached to a 3ware 9000 RAID controller to supply power from a battery pack in the event of a system power loss. This allows the controller to use write-caching for optimal performance and to preserve data in the event of a system power failure. When fully charged, the battery preserves the contents of the cache memory for up to 72 hours. When power is restored, the cached write data is written to the disks.

Two different BBU models are available, one for 9500S controllers (BBU-9500S-01) and one for 9550SX and 9590SE controllers (BBU-9550SX-01).



Note: When the BBU status is not “Ready,” write caching is automatically disabled on all units attached to the controller.

You can see information about a battery backup unit attached to your controller in both 3DM 2 and 3BM.

To view information about a BBU in 3DM 2

- On the menu bar, choose **Monitor > Battery Backup**.

The Battery Backup Page appears, on which you can see details and status about the unit. This page is refreshed every 30 seconds.

For details about the fields on this page, see “Battery Backup Page” on page 110.

To view information about a BBU in 3BM

- At the main 3BM screen, tab to the **Information** button and press **Enter**.

On the pop-up menu, select **Battery Backup** and press **Enter**.

The Battery Backup Unit screen appears.

The fields on this screen are the same as those available through 3DM. For details about the fields, see “Battery Backup Page” on page 110.

Testing Battery Capacity

Batteries in the BBU need to be replaced periodically. A battery test should be run every four weeks in order to get a reliable estimate of battery capacity, and to determine when it needs to be replaced.

The battery test is used to measure the battery's capacity to back up write data. In order to make a reliable estimate of battery capacity, the BBU pre-charges the battery before it proceeds with a full discharge cycle. The battery is automatically charged again after the test completes. The whole process usually takes between 8 and 12 hours.

While running the battery test and until charging is completed, write cache is temporarily disabled.

For how to replace the battery, see the installation guide that came with your controller.

To test the battery in a BBU in 3DM 2

- 1 On the menu bar, choose **Monitor > Battery Backup**.
- 2 On the Battery Backup Page, click the **Test Battery Capacity** link.

Battery Backup Information (Controller ID 0)	
Battery Backup Unit	PRESENT
Firmware	BBU: 1.01.01.000
Serial #	M21900A5390019
BBU Ready	Ready
BBU Status	OK
Battery Voltage	OK
Battery Temperature	OK
Estimated Backup Capacity	0 hours
Last Capacity Test	xx-xxx-xxxx [Test Battery Capacity]
Battery Installation Date	26-Oct-2005

Last updated Fri, Oct 26, 2005 08:35:32PM
 This page will automatically refresh every 5 minute(s)
 3DM 2 version 2.04.00.011
 Copyright © 1997-2005 AMCC. All rights reserved.

Figure 91. Battery Backup Information Screen in 3DM

- 3 When a message cautions you that testing the battery will disable the BBU for up to 24 hours, click **OK** to continue.

After the battery test starts, you will see the voltage start dropping; eventually the battery voltage will say "LOW". This is part of the battery test. After the voltage drops to a point, it will start charging again, and the status will change to "Charging." Eventually, the battery voltage will say "OK" again.

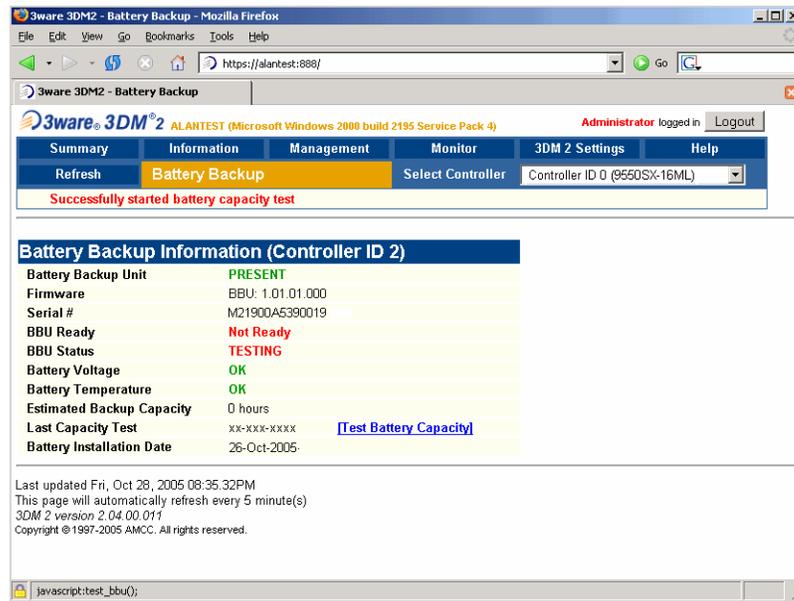


Figure 92. BBU Information Screen While Battery is Testing

To test the battery in a BBU in 3BM

- 1 At the main 3BM screen, tab to the **BBU** button and press **Enter**.
- 2 Tab to **Test Battery Capacity** and press **Enter**.



Figure 93. Battery Backup Information Screen in 3BM

Troubleshooting

For support, troubleshooting tips, frequently asked questions, software releases, and compatibility information related to 3ware RAID controllers, refer to:

- 3ware support page at:
<http://www.3ware.com/support/>
- 3ware knowledgebase:
<http://www.3ware.com/KB/kb.asp>
- 3ware software downloads:
<http://www.3ware.com/support/download.asp>
- 3ware documentation:
<http://www.3ware.com/support/userdocs.asp>
- 3ware Compatibility Lists:
http://www.3ware.com/support/sys_compatibility.asp

Before Contacting Customer Support

Three screens in 3DM 2 provide controller version and status information that can be helpful when contacting 3ware Customer Support with questions or for troubleshooting: Controller Summary, Unit Details, and Unit Information.

You can copy and paste the information from these screens into an email using the system clipboard. When each page is displayed on the screen, highlight using your mouse, press Ctrl-C to copy it to the clipboard, and then Ctrl-V to paste it into an e-mail.

You may also want to take a snapshot of these pages so that you can respond to questions about your system configuration to the Customer Support representative.

Problems and Solutions

Hardware Installation

Q1: The 3ware BIOS screen never appears.

The 3ware RAID controller may not be installed properly. Reinstall the hardware and reboot.

There may also be a problem with the motherboard. Please check the Motherboard Compatibility List on the 3ware website at <http://www.3ware.com/products/compatibility.asp> to see if your motherboard has been tested by 3ware. If you have a different type of motherboard available, you may want to test the controller in it to see if the 3ware BIOS screen appears.

The motherboard's BIOS may need to be upgraded. Check the web site of the motherboard manufacturer to download and install their latest BIOS.

You can also try using a different PCI slot. If you are using a PCI riser card, try installing it directly. Some riser cards are not compatible with certain motherboards.

Q2: Need to boot from a non-3ware device without changing the boot order.

If the operating system is installed on a 3ware unit, you can temporarily bypass the 3ware BIOS and prevent the OS from booting from that unit by pressing Alt-b. This saves the step of changing the boot order in the motherboard BIOS and 3BM and having to change it back again.

Check the 3ware KnowledgeBase for details related to other issues: <http://www.3ware.com/KB/kb.asp>.

Software Installation

Q4: The 3ware RAID controller was configured without problems, but the system does not boot.

The problem could be one or more of the following:

- The BIOS may have changed the order of the boot devices. Check your system BIOS boot sequence.
- The operating system is installed on a device that is not in your system's boot order. Use your system's Setup utility to include the StorSwitch controller in the boot order.
- If your operating system was installed before you configured your RAID units, you may have overwritten your operating system.

Remember that creating or deleting a RAID unit overwrites any existing data on the member drives. Reinstall your operating system.

- If you installed your operating system when you installed the 3ware RAID controller, you may have made a mistake in installing the operating system. Reinstall your operating system.
- There may be a compatibility problem between the motherboard system BIOS and the 3ware BIOS. Check the 3ware website (www.3ware.com) to see if your motherboard is compatible with the 3ware BIOS, and check with your motherboard manufacturer for potential BIOS updates.

Q5: A unit shows up as unusable, similar to the following:

```
4 drive 64K RAID 5 missing drive(s)
```

```
Port 1 Maxtor 6B300S0      279.86 GB
Port 2 Maxtor 6B300S0      279.86 GB
```

The unit has some but not all of its members available. The unit will be unusable. If this unit is your boot device, your system will not boot. You must either find the missing disk and replace it to complete the unit, or release the member disks by deleting the incomplete array(s) listed in the display. Remember that deleting a RAID unit overwrites any existing data on the member drives.

Problems in 3DM

Q6: A 3ware RAID controller does not show in the list of controllers.

You may not have the most recent driver for your controller (7000/8000, 9000).

To find out the driver number currently installed, see “Determining the Current Version of Your 3ware Driver” on page 199

Current drivers are available for download on the 3ware website at <http://www.3ware.com/support/download.asp>.

AEN Messages

AEN (asynchronous event notifications) are messages issued by the 3ware RAID controller when an error is detected such or when an action is completed. These are summarized in Table 11. Descriptions of each are provided at the end of the table.

If you use 3DM 2, AEN messages are displayed on the Alarms page. If you use the CLI, AEN messages can be listed using the `show alarms` command.

On the 3DM 2 Alarms page, the AEN number is the last few digits within the parentheses at the beginning of the message description. For example, in the string `(0x04:0x002B)`, “2B” is the AEN number. To find additional information about the AEN 2B, you would look up 02Bh on the pages below.

Sev	Time	Message
	Mon, Jan 19, 2004 01:12.54AM	(0x04:0x002B): Background verify done: unit=0
	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 11:57.02PM	(0x04:0x0029): Background verify started: unit=0
	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 01:16.35AM	(0x04:0x002B): Background verify done: unit=0
	Sun, Jan 18, 2004 12:00.48AM	(0x04:0x0029): Background verify started: unit=0

AEN Error Message Summary

Table 11: AEN Error Message Summary

Value	Message
001h	Controller reset occurred
002h	Degraded unit
003h	Controller error occurred
004h	Rebuild failed
005h	Rebuild done
006h	Incomplete unit detected
007h	Initialize completed
008h	Unclean shutdown detected
009h	Drive timeout detected
00Ah	Drive error detected
00Bh	Rebuild started
00Ch	Initialize started
00Dh	Unit deleted

Table 11: AEN Error Message Summary

Value	Message
00Eh	Initialize failed
00Fh	SMART threshold exceeded
019h	Drive removed
01Ah	Drive inserted
01Eh	Unit inoperable
01Fh	Unit operational
020h	Prepare for shutdown (power-off)
021h	Downgrade UDMA mode
022h	Upgrade UDMA mode
023h	Sector repair completed
024h	Buffer integrity test failed
025h	Cache flush failed; some data lost
026h	Drive ECC error reported
027h	DCB checksum error reported
028h	DCB version unsupported
029h	Verify started
02Ah	Verify failed
02Bh	Verify completed
02Ch	Source drive ECC error occurred
02Dh	Source drive error occurred
02Eh	Replacement drive capacity too small
02Fh	Verify not started; unit never initialized
030h	Drive not supported
032h	Spare capacity too small for some units
033h	Migration started
034h	Migration failed
035h	Migration done
036h	Verify fixed data/parity mismatch
037h	SO-DIMM not compatible
038h	SO-DIMM not detected

Table 11: AEN Error Message Summary

Value	Message
039h	Buffer ECC error corrected
03Ah	Drive power on reset detected
03Bh	Rebuild paused
03Ch	Initialize paused
03Dh	Verify paused
03Eh	Migration paused
03Fh	Flash file system error detected
040h	Flash file system repaired
041h	Unit number assignments lost
042h	Primary DCB read error occurred
043h	Backup DCB read error detected
044h	Battery voltage is normal
045h	Battery voltage is low
046h	Battery voltage is high
047h	Battery voltage is too low
048h	Battery voltage is too high
049h	Battery temperature is normal
04Ah	Battery temperature is low
04Bh	Battery temperature is high
04Ch	Battery temperature is too low
04Dh	Battery temperature is too high
04Eh	Battery capacity test started
04Fh	Cache synchronization skipped
050h	Battery capacity test completed
051h	Battery health check started
052h	Battery health check completed
053h	Battery capacity test is overdue
055h	Battery charging started
056h	Battery charging completed
057h	Battery charging fault

Table 11: AEN Error Message Summary

Value	Message
058h	Battery capacity is below warning level
059h	Battery capacity is below error level
05Ah	Battery is present
05Bh	Battery is not present
05Ch	Battery is weak
05Dh	Battery health check failed
05Eh	Cache synchronization completed
05Fh	Cache synchronization failed; some data lost

AEN Error Message Details

001h Controller reset occurred

The 3ware RAID controller has detected a soft reset from the device driver. If the 3ware RAID controller fails to respond to the device driver within a reasonable amount of time, the device driver may issue a soft reset to the 3ware RAID controller and retry the command packet.

002h Degraded unit

An error has been encountered and the array is operating in degraded (non-redundant) mode. The user should replace the bad drive as soon as possible and initiate a rebuild.

Removing a drive from a redundant unit will cause this AEN immediately.

003h Controller error occurred

The 3ware RAID controller has encountered an internal error. Please contact AMCC Customer Support as a replacement board may be required.

004h Rebuild failed

The 3ware RAID controller was unable to complete a rebuild operation. This error can be caused by drive errors on either the source or the destination of the rebuild. However, due to ATA drives' ability to reallocate sectors on write errors, the rebuild failure is most likely caused by the source drive of the rebuild detecting some sort of read error. The default operation of the 3ware

RAID controller is to abort a rebuild if an error is encountered. If it is desired to continue on error, you can set the Continue on Source Error During Rebuild policy for the unit on the Controller Settings page in 3DM.

005h Rebuild completed

The 3ware RAID controller has successfully completed a rebuild. The completion of the rebuild changes the state of the array from rebuilding to OK. The data is now redundant.

006h Incomplete unit detected

At power-on initialization time, or during a rescan, the 3ware RAID controller performs a “rollcall” of all drives attached to the card. After detection of the drives, the 3ware RAID controller then uses an internal algorithm to logically connect drives that belong to the same array. If after rollcall a member of an array is not found, the INCOMPLETE UNIT AEN is sent. Examples of incomplete units are as follows:

- 3-drive or larger RAID 5 unit with two or more drives missing. This also applies to RAID 5 units that are part of a RAID50 unit.
- 4-drive RAID 10 unit with three drives missing.

Replacing the missing or dead drive and initiating a rebuild will change the state of the array from an incomplete unit to OK. No rebuild is required if you replace the missing drive before loading the driver.

007h Initialize completed

The 3ware RAID controller has completed the initialization sequence of RAID levels 1, 10, 5, or 50. For RAID 5 and RAID 50, the data on the array is read and the resultant parity is written to the parity area on the array. For RAID 1 and 10, one half of the mirror is copied to the other half (mirrors are synchronized).

008h Unclean shutdown detected

The 3ware RAID controller has the ability to detect if the system has been shutdown via the standard shutdown mechanism of the operating system (clean shutdown). If the system loses power or is reset without going through the normal shutdown procedure, it is possible that the data on a redundant array may be out of synchronization. The unclean shutdown detection will detect this case and force the array to enter the rebuilding state. This has the effect of synchronizing the array back to a fully redundant state.

To prevent unclean shutdowns, the user should always go through the normal shutdown procedure for the operating system in use and use an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to prevent unclean shutdowns due to sudden power loss.

009h Drive timeout detected

The 3ware RAID controller has a sophisticated recovery mechanism to handle various types of failures of a disk drive. One such possible failure of a disk drive is a failure of a command that is pending from the 3ware RAID controller to complete within a reasonable amount of time. If the 3ware RAID controller detects this condition, it notifies the user, prior to entering the recovery phase, by displaying this AEN.

Possible causes of APORT time-outs include a bad or intermittent disk drive, power cable or interface cable.

00Ah Drive error detected

As part of the recovery mechanism of the 3ware RAID controller, various drive failures can be detected and, if possible, corrected. One such drive failure is when the drive indicates back to the 3ware RAID controller that it was unable to complete a command. If the drive returns an error to the 3ware RAID controller, the user is notified by this AEN.

00Bh Rebuild started

The 3ware RAID controller notifies the user whenever it starts a rebuild. The rebuild start may be user-initiated (by selecting the rebuild button in the 3DM Disk Management Utility), may be auto-initiated by a hot spare failover, or may be started after drive removal or insertion (due to the Auto-Rebuild policy). In any of these cases, the user is notified of the event by this AEN.

00Ch Initialize started

The 3ware RAID controller notifies the user by this AEN whenever it starts an initialization. Initialization either occurs at array creation time for larger RAID 5 or 50 arrays or later during the initial verification of redundant arrays.

00Dh Unit deleted

The unit was deleted.

00Eh Initialize failed

The 3ware RAID controller was unable to complete the initialization. This error can be caused by unrecoverable drive errors. When this error occurs, the unit will go back to degraded mode if possible.

00Fh SMART threshold exceeded

The 3ware RAID controller supports SMART Monitoring, whereby the individual drives automatically monitor certain parametric information such as error rates and retry counts. By monitoring this data, SMART may be able to predict a drive failure before it happens, allowing a user to schedule service of the array before it becomes degraded. The SMART status of each drive attached to the 3ware RAID controller is monitored daily. If a failure of any drive is determined to be likely, the user is notified by this AEN.

3ware recommends that you replace any drive that has the SMART attribute exceeded.

019h Drive removed

Drive removed.

This AEN is posted whenever a drive is removed from the controller while the controller is powered on.

01Ah Drive inserted

Drive inserted.

This AEN is posted whenever a drive is connected to the controller while the controller is powered on.

01Eh Unit inoperable

Unit inoperable. Drive removal caused unit to become inoperable. This AEN is sent after offline unit timer expires; if the unit becomes operational before the timer expires (20 seconds) there will be no AEN since there were no IO errors.

01Fh Unit Operational

Unit operational. Drive insertion caused the unit to become operational again. This AEN is sent only after the offline timer expires (20 seconds).

020h Prepare for shutdown (power-off)

021h Downgrade UDMA mode

The 3ware RAID controller communicates to the ATA disk drives through the Ultra DMA (UDMA) protocol. This protocol ensures data integrity across the ATA cable by appending a Cyclical Redundancy Check (CRC) for all ATA data that is transferred. If the data becomes corrupted between the drive and the 3ware RAID controller (e.g., an intermittent cable connection) the 3ware RAID controller detects this as a UDMA CRC or cable error. The 3ware RAID controller then retries the failed command three times at the current UDMA transfer rate. If the error persists, it lowers the UDMA transfer rate (e.g., from UDMA 100 to UDMA 66) and retries another three times. This AEN is sent to the user when the 3ware RAID controller lowers the UDMA transfer rate.

Possible causes of UDMA CRC errors are bad interface cables or cable routing problems through electrically noisy environments (e.g., cables are too close to the power supply).

022h Upgrade UDMA mode

During the self-test, if a drive is found to not be in the optimal UDMA mode, the controller will upgrade its UDMA mode to be optimal.

023h Sector repair completed

The 3ware RAID controller supports a feature called dynamic sector repair to allow the unit to recover from certain drive errors that would normally result in a degraded array situation. For redundant arrays such as RAID 1, 10, 50, and 5, the 3ware RAID controller essentially has two copies of the users data available. If a read command to a sector on a disk drive results in an error, it reverts to the redundant copy in order to satisfy the host's request. At this point, the 3ware RAID controller has a good copy of the requested data in its cache memory. It will then use this data to force the failing drive to reallocate the bad sector, which essentially repairs the sector. When a sector repair occurs, the user is notified by this AEN.

The fact that a sector repair AEN has been sent to the user is an indication of the presence of grown defects on a particular drive. While typical modern disk drives are designed to allow several hundred grown defects, special attention should be paid to any drive in an array that begins to indicate sector repair messages. This may be an indication of a drive that is beginning to fail. The user may wish to replace the drive, especially if the number of sector repair errors exceeds 3 per month.

024h Sbuf memory test failed

The 3ware RAID controller, as part of its data integrity features, performs diagnostics on its internal RAM devices. Once a day, a non-destructive test is performed on the cache memory. Failure of the test indicates a failure of a hardware component on the 3ware RAID controller. This AEN is sent to notify the user of the problem. If the controller is still under warranty, contact 3ware Technical Support for a replacement controller.

025h Cache flush failed; some data lost

To improve performance, this 3ware RAID controller features caching layer firmware. For write commands this means that it acknowledges it has completed a write operation before the data is committed to disk. If the 3ware RAID controller can not commit the data to the media after it has acknowledged to the host, this AEN is posted to the user.

Typically, the LOST CACHED WRITE notification would be an indication of a catastrophic failure of the drives in the array, such as loss of power to multiple drives in an array.

026h Drive ECC error reported

This AEN may be sent when a drive returns the ECC error response to an 3ware RAID controller command. The AEN may or may not be associated with a host command. Internal operations such as Background Media Scan post this AEN whenever drive ECC errors are detected.

Drive ECC errors are an indication of a problem with grown defects on a particular drive. For redundant arrays, this typically means that dynamic sector repair would be invoked (see AEN 023h). For non-redundant arrays (JBOD, RAID 0 and degraded arrays), drive ECC errors result in the 3ware RAID controller returning failed status to the associated host command.

027h DCB checksum error detected

The 3ware RAID controller stores certain configuration parameters on a reserved area of each disk drive called the Drive Configuration Block (DCB). As part of power-on initialization, the 3ware RAID controller performs a checksum of the DCB area to ensure consistency. If an error occurs, please contact 3ware technical support. The drive's DCB has been corrupted.

028h DCB version unsupported

During the evolution of the 3ware product line, the format of the DCB has been changed to accommodate new features. The DCB format expected by the 3ware RAID controller and the DCB that is written on the drive must be

compatible. If an array that was created on a very old 3ware product is connected to a newer 3ware RAID controller, this AEN is posted and the 3ware RAID controller rejects the drive. Please contact 3ware technical support if this event occurs.

029h Verify started

The 3ware RAID controller allows the user to verify data integrity on an array. The verification functions for different RAID levels are as follows:

- Single, JBOD, and Spare. Verify = Media Scan
- RAID 0. Verify = Media Scan
- RAID 1. Verify = Compare of Mirror Sides
- RAID 10. Verify = Compare of Mirror Sides
- RAID 5 and 50. Verify = Compare of Parity Data with User Data

When the verification starts, this AEN is posted to the user.

02Ah Verify failed

This AEN indicates that the data integrity verification function (see AEN 029h) has terminated with an error. For each RAID level being verified, this may mean:

- Single, JBOD, and Spare. A single drive returned an error, possibly because of a media defect.
- RAID 0. A single drive returned an error, possibly because of a media defect.
- RAID 1. One side of the mirror does not equal the other side.
- RAID 10. One side of the mirror does not equal the other side.
- RAID 5 and 50. The parity data does not equal the user data.

For any RAID type, the most likely cause of the error is a grown defect in the drive. For out-of-synchronization mirrors or parity, the error could be caused by improper shutdown of the array. This possibility applies to RAID 1, 10, 5, and 50. A rebuild will re-synchronize the array.

02Bh Verify completed

This AEN indicates the data integrity verification function (see AEN 029h) was completed successfully.

02Ch Source drive ECC error overwritten

If a read error is encountered during a rebuild and the user chooses to ignore the error, the sector in error is reallocated. The user is notified of the event by this AEN.

02Dh Source drive error occurred

If an error is encountered during a rebuild operation, this AEN is generated if the error was on a source drive of the rebuild. Knowing if the error occurred on the source or the destination of the rebuild is useful for troubleshooting.

02Eh Replacement drive capacity too small

The 3ware RAID controller notifies the user by this AEN when the replacement drive capacity is smaller than required. The replacement drive must be equal to or greater capacity than the drive it's replacing.

02Fh Verify not started; unit never initialized

This AEN will be sent by the controller when a verify operation is attempted but the unit has never been initialized before. The unit will transition to initializing mode.

030h Drive not supported

3ware 8000 and 9000 series Serial ATA Controller only support UltraDMA-100/133 drives when using the parallel to serial ATA converter. This AEN indicates that an unsupported drive was detected during rollcall or a hot add. This AEN also could indicate that the Serial to Parallel converter was jumpered in the wrong place. The converter must be correctly jumpered to correspond to UDMA 100 or 133 drives.

032h Spare capacity too small for some units

This AEN is sent by the controller when it finds a valid hot spare but the capacity is not sufficient to use it for a drive replacement.

033h Migration started

This AEN is sent when migration of a unit is started.

034h Migration failed

This AEN is sent when migration of a unit fails. Look at the Alarms page for other entries that will give you an idea of why the migration failed (such as a drive error on a specific port).

035h Migration completed

This AEN is sent when migration of a unit is complete. The new capacity is now ready to be used. If the capacity of the array did not change, then you don't need to do anything else. If the capacity of the migrated array is larger, please refer to the part of this document on migration for information on how to change the file system to use the new capacity.

036h Verify fixed data/parity mismatch

This AEN is sent by the controller when a verify error is found (parity inconsistency for RAID5/50 or data mismatch for RAID1/10 configuration) and recovered. If the error is not recovered the AEN_VERIFY_FAILED is returned instead.

037h SO-DIMM not compatible

This AEN will be sent if an incompatible SODIMM memory has been connected to the controller. In this case, the controller is inoperable.

038h SO-DIMM not detected

This AEN will be sent if there is no SODIMM memory connected to the controller. In this case, the controller is inoperable.

039h Buffer ECC error corrected

This AEN will be sent when the controller has detected and corrected a memory ECC error.

03Ah Drive power on reset detected

If the controller detects that a drive has been power-cycled, it will send this AEN. The controller may degrade the unit (if possible).

03Bh Rebuild paused

This AEN will be sent when the rebuild operation is paused.

Rebuilds are normally paused for ten minutes after a system first boots up and during non-scheduled times when scheduling is enabled.

03Ch Initialize paused

This AEN will be sent when the initialization is paused.

Initializations are normally paused for ten minutes after a system first boots up and during non-scheduled times when scheduling is enabled. Initializations follow the rebuild schedule.

03Dh Verify paused

This AEN will be sent when the verify operation is paused.

Verifies are normally paused for ten minutes after a system first boots up and during non-scheduled times when scheduling is enabled.

03Eh Migration paused

This AEN is sent when migration is paused. Migration follows the rebuild schedule. For more information, see “Scheduling Background Tasks” on page 184.

03Fh Flash file system error detected

The 3ware RAID controller stores some configuration parameters as files in its flash memory. This AEN will be sent when a corrupted flash file system is found on the controller during boot-up. A further attempt will be made to repair the flash file system. These files usually get corrupted when a flash operation is interrupted by events such as power failures.

040h Flash file system repaired

This AEN will be sent if a corrupted flash file system is successfully repaired. Some of the flash files with insufficient data may be lost in the operation. The configuration parameters which are lost will then return to their default values.

041h Unit number assignments lost

The 3ware RAID controller tries to keep the unit numbers persistent across soft resets. This AEN will be sent if unit number assignments were lost from some unknown reasons. (This event rarely happens. Please contact AMCC 3ware technical support if this event occurs.)

042h Primary DCB read error occurred

This AEN will be sent when the controller finds error in reading the primary copy of the Disk Configuration Block (DCB). The back-up copy of the DCB

will be read if this error occurs. If a valid DCB is found, the primary DCB is re-written to rectify the errors found.

043h Backup DCB read error detected

This AEN will be sent when the controller sees a latent error in the backup Disk Configuration Block (DCB). A scrubbing activity will be started to repair any sector errors on getting this error. An effort is made to read the backup DCB even when the primary DCB is successfully read. When an error occurs here, this is a latent error that needs to be addressed before any future errors so this DCB is re-written with the primary copy to rectify the errors found.

044h Battery voltage is normal

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack voltage on a continuous basis. If the voltage falls outside the acceptable range then comes back within the acceptable range, this AEN will be posted to the host.

045h Battery voltage is low

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack voltage on a continuous basis. If the voltage is below the warning threshold, this AEN will be posted to the user. When this event happens, the Battery Backup Unit is still able to backup the 3ware RAID controller, but the user should replace the battery.

046h Battery voltage is high

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack voltage on a continuous basis. If the voltage is above a warning threshold, this AEN will be posted to the user. When this event happens, the Battery backup Unit is still able to backup the 3ware RAID controller but the user should replace the battery.

047h Battery voltage is too low

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack voltage on a continuous basis. If the voltage is too low to operate, this AEN will be posted to the user. This indicates that the battery pack must be replaced. The Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller.

048h Battery voltage is too high

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack voltage on a continuous basis. If the voltage is too high to operate, this AEN will be posted to the user. The Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller. This indicates that the Battery Backup Unit must be replaced.

049h Battery temperature is normal

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature on a continuous basis. If the temperature falls outside the acceptable range then comes back within the acceptable range, this AEN will be posted to the host.

04Ah Battery temperature is low

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature on a continuous basis. If the temperature is below a warning threshold, this AEN will be posted to the user. When this event happens, the Battery Backup Unit is still able to backup the 3ware RAID controller but the user should replace the battery pack.

04Bh Battery temperature is high

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature on a continuous basis. If the temperature is above a warning threshold, this AEN will be posted to the user. The user should check that there is enough airflow around the Battery Backup Unit. When this event happens, the Battery Backup Unit is still able to backup the 3ware RAID controller but the user should replace the battery pack if the temperature warning persists.

04Ch Battery temperature is too low

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature on a continuous basis. If the temperature is too low to operate, this AEN will be posted to the user. When this event happens, the Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller. The user must replace the battery pack.

04Dh Battery temperature is too high

The Battery Backup Unit measures and evaluates the battery pack temperature on a continuous basis. If the temperature is too high to operate, this AEN will be posted to the user. The user should check that there is

enough airflow around the Battery Backup Unit. When this event happens, the Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller. The user must replace the battery pack if the temperature error persists. The use of a PCI card in the slot adjacent to the BBU is not recommended and may result in the battery temperature being exceeded.

04Eh Battery capacity test started

This AEN is posted when the Battery Backup Unit starts a battery test. The test estimates the battery capacity in hours, which is how long the Battery Backup Unit can back up the 3ware RAID controller. This test performs a full battery charge/discharge/re-charge cycle and may take up to 20 hours to complete. During this test the Battery Backup Unit cannot backup the 3ware RAID controller; all units have their write cache disabled until the test completes.

04Fh Cache synchronization skipped

The 3ware RAID controller performs cache synchronization when system power is restored following a power failure. This AEN is posted when the cache synchronization was skipped and write data is still being backed up in the controller cache. This can occur if a unit that was present before the power failure was physically removed or became inoperable before system power was restored.

050h Battery capacity test completed

This AEN is posted when the Battery Backup Unit completes a battery capacity test. All units will have their write cache settings restored to their original values since the Battery Backup Unit is now able to backup the 3ware RAID controller.

051h Battery health check started

The Battery Backup Unit periodically evaluates the health of the battery and its ability to backup the 3ware RAID controller in case of a power failure. This AEN is posted to the host when this health check is started.

052h Battery health check completed

The Battery Backup Unit evaluates periodically the health of the battery and its ability to backup the 3ware RAID controller in case of a power failure. This AEN is posted to the host when this health check has completed.

053h Battery capacity test is overdue

The recommended time interval for running the battery capacity test is once every 4 weeks. If a battery capacity test has not been completed in the last 4 weeks this AEN will be sent to the host, and once every week thereafter.

055h Battery charging started

This AEN is posted when the Battery Backup Unit starts a battery charge cycle.

056h Battery charging completed

This AEN is posted when the Battery Backup Unit completes a battery charge cycle.

057h Battery charging fault

This AEN is posted when the charger of the Battery Backup Unit has detected a battery fault during a charge cycle. The Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller.

058h Battery capacity is below warning level

The measured capacity of the battery is below the warning level. When this occurs the Battery Backup Unit is still able to backup the 3ware RAID controller but it signals that the battery pack should be replaced soon.

059h Battery capacity is below error level

The measured capacity of the battery is below the error level. When this occurs the Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller. The user must replace the battery pack.

05Ah Battery is present

This AEN is posted to the host when the Battery Backup Unit detects that a battery pack has been connected.

05Bh Battery is not present

This AEN is posted to the host when the Battery Backup Unit detects that the battery pack has been removed.

05Ch Battery is weak

The Battery Backup Unit periodically evaluates the health of the battery and its ability to backup the 3ware RAID controller in case of a power failure. This AEN is posted when the result of the health test is below the warning threshold. This indicates that the battery pack should be replaced soon because the battery is becoming weak.

05Dh Battery health check failed

The Battery Backup Unit periodically evaluates the health of the battery and its ability to backup the 3ware RAID controller in case of a power failure. This AEN is posted when the result of the health test is below the fault threshold. This indicates that the battery pack must be replaced. The Battery Backup Unit becomes not ready and is unable to backup the 3ware RAID controller.

05Eh Cache synchronization completed

If drive insertion causes unit to become operational this will be sent if retained write cache data was flushed.

The 3ware RAID controller performs cache synchronization when system power is restored following a power failure. This AEN is posted for each unit when the cache synchronization completed successfully.

05Fh Cache synchronization failed; some data lost

The 3ware RAID controller performs cache synchronization when system power is restored following a power failure. This AEN is posted when cache synchronization was not successful for some reason.

Glossary

- **3BM 2.** 3ware BIOS Manager. The 3ware BIOS (Basic Input Output System) manager is a basic interface used to view, maintain, and manage 3ware controllers, disks, and units, without having to boot the operating system. 3BM is included with the controller and is updated when the controller firmware is flash-upgraded. For 9550SX and 9590SE controllers, the tw_update utility is used to update the firmware. The latest firmware and code set is available for download from the 3ware web site: <http://www.3ware.com/support/>
- **3DM 2.** 3ware Disk Manager. The 3ware disk manager is a web-based graphical user interface that can be used to view, maintain, and manage 3ware controllers, disks, and units. It is available for download from <http://www.3ware.com/downloads>.
- **3ware.** Named after the 3 computer wares: hardware, software and firmware. A leading brand of high-performance, high-capacity Serial ATA (SATA) RAID storage solutions.
- **A-Chip.** AccerATA chip. Automated data port to handle asynchronous ATA disk drive interface.
- **AMCC.** Applied Micro Circuits Corporation provides the essential building blocks for the processing, moving and storing of information worldwide.
- **Array.** One or more disk drives that appear to the operating system as a single unit. Within 3ware software (3BM and 3DM) arrays are typically referred to as units.
- **Array Roaming.** The process of swapping out or adding in a configured unit without having to shut down the system. This is useful if you need to move the unit to another controller.
- **Background rebuild rate.** The rate at which a particular controller initializes, rebuilds, and verifies redundant units (RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 50).
- **Boot volume size.** The size to be assigned to volume 0 when creating a unit through 3BM. Note that the resulting volume does not have to be used as a boot volume. However, if the operating system is installed on the unit, it is installed in volume 0.

- **Carve size.** The size over which a unit will be divided into volumes, if auto-carving is enabled.
- **CLI.** Command Line Interface. The 3ware CLI is a text program, rather than a GUI (graphical user interface), for Windows, Linux, and FreeBSD. It has the same functionality as 3DM, and can be used to view, maintain, and manage 3ware controllers, disks, and units.
- **Configuration.** The RAID level set for a unit.
- **Controller ID number.** The unique SCSI number in the Windows environment, or the Channel number in the Linux environment, of a particular controller. Typically assigned by the operating system.
- **Create an array.** The process of selecting individual disk drives and selecting a RAID level. The array will appear to the operating system as a single unit. Overwrites any existing unit configuration data on the drives. Note that in 3ware software tools, arrays are referred to as units.
- **DCB.** Disk configuration block. This is 3ware proprietary RAID table information that is written to disk drives that are in a RAID unit, single disk, or spare. The DCB includes information on the unit type, unit members, RAID level, and other important RAID information.
- **Delete an array.** Deleting an array (or unit) is the process of returning the drives in a unit to individual drives. This erases the DCB information from the drives and deletes any data that was on them. When a unit is deleted from a controller, it is sometimes referred to as being “destroyed.” If you want to remove a unit without deleting the data on it, do not delete it; instead use the Remove feature in 3DM, and then physically remove the drives.
- **Destroying.** Same as deleting a unit.
- **Degraded unit.** A redundant unit that contains a drive that has failed.
- **Disk roaming.** When moving a unit from one controller to another, refers to putting disks back in a different order than they initially occupied, without harm to the data.
- **Distributed parity.** Parity (error correction code) data is distributed across several drives in RAID 5 and RAID 50 configurations. Distributing parity data across drives provides both protection of data and good performance.
- **Drive ID.** A unique identifier for a specific drive in a system. Also called a port ID.
- **Drive Number.** The SCSI number, or channel number, of a particular drive.
- **ECC.** Error correction code.

-
- **ECC Error policy.** Determines whether an error detected during a rebuild stops the rebuild or whether the rebuild can continue in spite of the error.
 - **EMS (Enclosure Management Services).** Chassis-monitoring functions for environmental, power, mechanical monitoring, and control using the I²C bus port.
 - **Export a unit.** To remove the association of a unit with a controller. Does not affect the data on the drives. Used for array roaming, when you want to swap out a unit without powering down the system, and move the unit to another controller. Compare to Delete, which erases all unit configuration information from the drive.
 - **Exportable unit or drive.** In 3BM (BIOS), exportable units and drives are those that will be available to the operating system when you boot your computer.
 - **Fault tolerant.** A RAID unit which provides the ability to recover from a failed drive, either because the data is duplicated (as when drives are mirrored) or because of error checking (as in a RAID 5 unit).
 - **Firmware.** Computer programming instructions that are stored in a read-only memory on the controller rather than being implemented through software.
 - **Grown defect.** Defects that arise on a disk from daily use.
 - **Hot spare.** A drive that is available, online, and designated as a spare. When a drive fails in a redundant unit, causing the unit to become degraded, a hot spare can replace the degraded drive automatically and the unit will be rebuilt.
 - **Hot swapping.** The process of removing a disk drive from the system while the power is on. Hot swapping can be used to remove units with data on them, when they are installed in hot-swap carriers. This is referred to as array roaming. Hot swapping can also be used to remove and replaced failed drives when a hot-swap carrier is used.
 - **I²C-(or Inter-IC) bus.** A two-wire serial bus solution used as a control, diagnostic, environmental, and power management for EMS (enclosure management services).
 - **Import a unit.** Attach a set of disk drives with an existing configuration to a controller and make the controller aware of the unit. Does not affect the data on the drives.
 - **Initialize.** Put the redundant data on the drives of redundant units into a known state so that data can be recovered in the event of a disk drive failure. For RAID 1 and 10, initialization copies the data from the lower port to the higher port. For RAID 5 and 50, initialization calculates the RAID 5 parity and writes it to disk (background initialization) or writes zeroes to all of the drives in the array (foreground initialization). Initialization does not erase user data if done while the operating system

is running. However, RAID 5 initialization done through the 3ware BIOS does erase any existing data.

- **JBOD.** An unconfigured single drive. The acronym is derived from “just a bunch of disks.” Note that earlier versions of the 3ware RAID controller exported JBODs to the OS. By default, this is not the case in 9000-series controllers. However, a policy in 3BM can be set that allows JBODs to be seen by the OS. By default, individual drives must be configured as Single Disks in order to be made available to the OS.
- **Migration.** The process of changing the characteristics of a unit. The change can be to expand the capacity of the array (OCE), change the stripe size of the array, change the array from redundant to non-redundant, or to change the array from non-redundant to redundant.
- **Mirrored disk array.** A pair of drives on which the same data is written, so that each provides a backup for the other. If one drive fails, the data is preserved on the paired drive. Mirrored disk arrays include RAID 1 and RAID 10.
- **NCQ (Native Command Queuing).** A feature designed to improve performance of SATA hard disks in some applications that require a lot of random access of data, such as server-type applications. When NCQ is enabled, the commands are reordered on the drive itself.

NCQ must be supported by the drive and is only available on the 9550SX and 9590SE controllers. NCQ must be turned on in both the drive and the RAID controller. By default, the RAID unit’s queue policy is disabled when creating a unit.

- **Non-redundant units.** A disk array without fault tolerance (RAID 0, single disk, or JBOD.).
- **OCE (Online Capacity Expansion).** The process of increasing the size of an existing RAID unit without having to create a new array. See also *migration*.
- **Parity.** Information that the controller calculates using an exclusive OR (XOR) algorithm and writes to the disk drives in RAID 5 and RAID 50 units. This data can be used with the remaining user data to recover the lost data if a disk drive fails.
- **PCB.** Printed circuit board.
- **P-Chip.** PCI interface chip that connects the PCI bus to the high-speed internal bus and routes all data between the two using a packet switched fabric. There is one P-chip per controller card.
- **Port ID.** A unique identifier for a specific port in a system. Also called a drive ID.
- **Rebuild task schedule.** The specification for when rebuilding, may occur, including start time and duration.

-
- **Rebuild a unit.** To generate data on a new drive after it is put into service to replace a degraded drive in a fault tolerant unit (for example, RAID 1, 10, 5, or 50).
 - **Redundancy.** Duplication of data on another drive or drives, so that it is protected in the event of a drive failure.
 - **Remove a drive.** The process of making a drive unavailable to the controller.
 - **Remove a unit.** The process of making a unit unavailable to the controller and the operating system. After a unit is removed it can be hot swapped out of the system. This is sometimes referred to as exporting a unit.
 - **RLM (RAID Level Migration).** The process of using an existing unit of one or more drives and converting it to a new RAID type without having to delete the original unit. For example, converting a single disk to a mirrored disk or converting a RAID 0 unit to a RAID 5 unit.
 - **Self-test.** A test that can be performed on a scheduled basis. Available self-tests include Upgrade UDMA mode and Check SMART Thresholds.
 - **Stagger time.** The delay between drive groups that will spin up, at one time, on a particular controller. (9000 series controllers only)
 - **Stripe size.** The size of the data written to each disk drive in RAID unit levels that support striping. The size of stripes can be set for a given unit during configuration. In general, smaller stripe sizes are better for sequential I/O, such as video, and larger stripe sizes are better for random I/O (such as databases). The stripe size is user-configurable at 64KB, 128KB, or 256KB.

This stripe size is sometimes referred to as a “minor” stripe size. A major stripe size is equal to the minor stripe size times the number of disks in the unit.

- **Striping.** The process of breaking up files into smaller sizes and distributing the data amongst two or more drives. Since smaller amounts of data are written to multiple disk drives simultaneously, this results in an increase in performance. Striping occurs in RAID 0, 5, 10 and 50.
- **Subunit.** A logical unit of storage that is part of another unit. For example, the mirrored pairs (RAID 1) in a RAID 10 unit are subunits of the RAID 10 unit.
- **UDMA mode.** UDMA mode is a protocol that supports bursting data up to 133 MB/sec with PATA disk drives and 1.5Gb/sec and 3.0 Gb/sec with SATA disk drives.
- **Unit ID.** A unique identifier for a specific unit in a system.
- **Unit Number.** The SCSI number, or channel number, of a particular unit.

- **Unit.** A logical unit of storage, which the operating system treats as a single drive. A unit may consist of a single drive or several drives. Also known as an array.
- **Verify.** A process that confirms the validity of the redundant data in a redundant unit. For a RAID 1 and RAID 10 unit, a verify will compare the data of one mirror with the other. For RAID 5 and RAID 50, a verify will calculate RAID 5 parity and compare it to what is written on the disk drive.

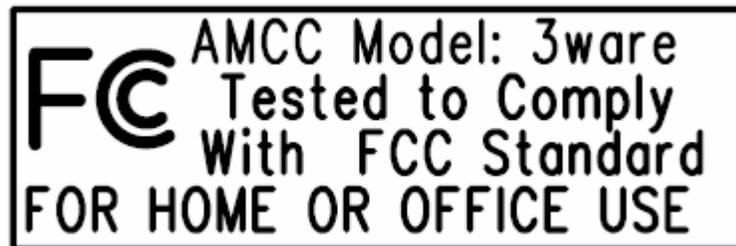
Compliance and Conformity Statements

Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

To maintain compliance with FCC radio frequency emission limits, use shielded cables and connectors between all parts of the computer system.



Microsoft Windows Hardware Quality Lab (WHQL)

AMCC is committed to Microsoft Windows Hardware Quality Labs (WHQL) certification for all its products. However, a product's software drivers are typically submitted for certification at nearly the same time as their release to market. Since the certification process may lag behind the release of the drivers, please refer to our WEB site at www.3ware.com for current certification information.

European Community Conformity Statement

The StorSwitch Controller Card Model StorSwitch 4D is in conformity with the following Common Technical Regulations and/or normative documents:

- EN 55022** Limits and methods of measurements of radio interference characteristics of information technology equipment
- EN 61000-4-2** Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) Part 4: Testing and measurement techniques Section 2: Electrostatic discharge immunity test
- EN 61000-4-3** Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) Part 4: Testing and measurement techniques Section 3: Radiated, Radio-Frequency, Electromagnetic Field Immunity Test
- EN 61000-4-4** Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) Part 4: Testing and measurement techniques Section 4: Electrical fast transient/burst immunity test
- EN 60950** Safety of information technology equipment, including electrical business equipment following the provisions of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 89/23/EEC Low Voltage Directive



Warranty, Technical Support, and Service

Limited Warranty

RAID Controller Hardware. 3-Year Hardware Warranty: AMCC warrants this product against defects in material and workmanship for a period of thirty-six (36) months from the date of original purchase. AMCC, at no charge and at its option, will repair or replace any part of this product which proves defective by reason of improper workmanship or materials. Repair parts or replacement products will be provided by AMCC on an exchange basis and will be either new or refurbished to be functionally equivalent to new. Products or parts replaced under this provision shall become the property of AMCC.

Battery Backup Unit (BBU) Hardware. 1-Year Hardware Warranty: AMCC warrants this product against defects in material and workmanship for a period of twelve (12) months from the date of original purchase. AMCC, at no charge and at its option, will repair or replace any part of this product which proves defective by reason of improper workmanship or materials. Repair parts or replacement products will be provided by AMCC on an exchange basis and will be either new or refurbished to be functionally equivalent to new. Products or parts replaced under this provision shall become the property of AMCC.

Software Warranty: AMCC will replace a defective media purchased with this product for a period of up to 30 days from the date of purchase.

For detailed terms and conditions, please see the Limited Hardware Warranty and Software License Agreement at our website:

http://www.3ware.com/support/rma_form.asp

AMCC warranty service is provided by returning the defective product to AMCC.

Exclusions

This warranty does not cover any damage to this product which results from accident, abuse, misuse, natural or personal disaster, or any unauthorized disassembly, repair or modification. AMCC shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential damages, including but not limited to loss of profits, other loss, damage or expense directly or indirectly arising from the customer's misuse of or inability to use the product, either separately or in combination with other equipment, regardless of whether AMCC has been advised of the possibility of such damages. AMCC is not liable for and does not cover under warranty, any costs associated with servicing and/or the installation of AMCC products. This warranty sets for the entire liability and obligations of AMCC with respect to breach of warranty and the warranties set forth or limited herein are the sole warranties and are in lieu of all other warranties, expressed or implied, including warranties or fitness for particular purpose and merchantability.

State Law Provisions

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may have other rights which vary from state to state. Some states do not allow the exclusion of incidental or consequential damages or allow limitation of implied warranties or their duration, so that the above exclusions or limitations may not apply.

Warranty Service and RMA Process

To obtain warranty service during the warranty period call AMCC toll free at 1 (800) 840-6055 or 1 (408) 542-8800 (direct) as soon as you have identified a problem with your AMCC 3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller unit. You will be issued a return material authorization (RMA) number. AMCC will send a replacement in approximately two business days after receipt of the defective unit (transit time not included).

Advanced replacement is available with a credit card number with authorization in the amount equaling the then current list price of the 3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller, including shipping costs. As soon as practicable thereafter, AMCC will ship the advanced replacement to you at the address of your choosing. Upon receipt of the advanced replacement, we ask that you immediately ship the defective AMCC 3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller to AMCC, RAID Products RMA DEPT, 6290 Sequence Drive, San Diego, CA 92121. If AMCC receives the defective AMCC 3ware Serial ATA RAID Controller from you within thirty (30) days of the date of shipment of the advanced replacement, AMCC will destroy your credit card authorization and you will not be charged for the advanced replacement.

Please use the original packing material contents of the box when exchanging or returning a product.

For information about the status of a replacement, please contact AMCC Technical Support.

AMCC Technical Support and Services

Product information, Frequently Asked Questions, software upgrades, driver files and other support are available through the AMCC World Wide Web site at <http://www.3ware.com>. AMCC's 3ware software library is accessible at: <http://www.3ware.com/support/download.asp>

Web-based software downloads feature upgrading multiple switches simultaneously.

For specific answers to questions or to give feedback about the product, visit our Web site at <http://www.3ware.com/support> and use our convenient e-mail form. AMCC also offers toll-free 1 (800) 840-6055 or 1 (408) 542-8800 direct phone support during normal business hours.

Sales and ordering information

For sales information, send an electronic mail message to 3wareSales@amcc.com.

Feedback on this manual

Your feedback is welcome. If anything in the guide seems unclear please let us know by using the email form at <http://www.3ware.com/support>.

Index

Numerics

2TB support 121

3BM

- creating a unit 133
- deleting a unit 159
- details about a controller 116
- exporting unconfigured disks 125
- help 63
- hot spare 140
- main screen 58
- navigation 59
- ordering units 137
- rebuild unit 191
- screens 58
- staggered spin-up 124
- starting 55
- verify unit 195
- working in 59
- write cache, disabling on degrade 126

3DM

- alarms 175
- Alarms page 109
- available drives 106
- background task rate 94
- browser requirements 66
- Controller Details page 86
- Controller Settings page 93
- Controller Summary page 84
- creating a unit 130, 131
- delete unit 105
- deleting a unit 157
- details about a controller 115
- Disk Management Utility 65
- drive
 - adding a 168
 - removing a 169
- Drive Information page 90
- drive status, checking 173
- enabling remote access 82
- errors 175
- hot spare 140
- incoming port number 114
- installing 3DM on Linux 70
- installing 3DM on Windows 67
- main screen 76
- Maintenance page 100

- managing email event notification 81, 113
 - menus 77
 - Other Controller Settings 96
 - page refresh 114
 - page refresh frequency 83
 - pages described 78
 - passwords 80, 113
 - preferences 80
 - problems 223
 - rebuild unit 104, 190
 - remote access 114
 - remote access, enabling 82
 - remove drive 103
 - remove unit 105
 - rescan controller 101
 - Scheduling page 98
 - screens described 78
 - self-tests, about 99
 - setting incoming port number 83
 - Settings page 112
 - SMART Details page 92
 - starting in Linux 73
 - task schedules, about 99
 - uninstalling 3DM on
 - Linux 72
 - Windows 70
 - Unit Details page 89
 - Unit Information page 87
 - unit maintenance 102
 - unit policies 94, 142
 - unit status, checking 173
 - unit write cache 94
 - verify unit 103, 195
 - write cache 144
- 3wUpdate.exe 201

A

A-Chip (definition) 243

AEN

- Backup DCB read error detected (043h) 237
- Battery capacity is below error level (059h) 240
- Battery capacity is below warning level (058h) 240
- Battery capacity test completed (050h) 239
- Battery capacity test is overdue (053h) 240
- Battery capacity test started (04Eh) 239
- Battery charging completed (056h) 240
- Battery charging fault (057h) 240
- Battery charging started (055h) 240

Battery health check completed (52h) 239
 Battery health check failed (05Dh) 241
 Battery health check started (051h) 239
 Battery is not present (05Bh) 240
 Battery is present (05Ah) 240
 Battery is weak (05Ch) 241
 Battery temperature is high (04Bh) 238
 Battery temperature is low (04Ah) 238
 Battery temperature is normal (049h) 238
 Battery temperature is too high (04Dh) 238
 Battery temperature is too low (04Ch) 238
 Battery voltage is high (046h) 237
 Battery voltage is low (045h) 237
 Battery voltage is normal (044h) 237
 Battery voltage is too high (048h) 238
 Battery voltage is too low (047h) 237
 Buffer ECC error corrected(039h) 235
 Buffer integrity test failed (024h) 232
 Cache flush failed 232
 Cache synchronization completed (05Eh) 241
 Cache synchronization failed 241
 Cache synchronization skipped (04Fh) 239
 Controller error occurred (003h) 227
 Controller reset occurred (001h) 227
 DCB checksum error detected(027h) 232
 DCB version unsupported (028h) 232
 Degraded unit (002h) 227
 Downgrade UDMA (021h) 231
 Drive ECC error reported (026h) 232
 Drive error detected (00Ah) 229
 Drive not supported (030h) 234
 Drive power on reset detected (03Ah) 235
 Drive removed (019h) 230
 Drive timeout detected (009h) 229
 Flash file system error detected (03Fh) 236
 Flash file system repaired (040h) 236
 Incomplete unit detected (006h) 228
 Initialize completed (007h) 228
 Initialize failed (00Eh) 230
 Initialize paused (03Ch) 236
 Initialize started (00Ch) 229
 Migration completed (035h) 235
 Migration failed (034h) 235
 Migration paused (03Eh) 236
 Migration started (033h) 234
 Primary DCB read error occurred (042h) 236
 Rebuild completed (005h) 228
 Rebuild failed (004h) 227
 Rebuild paused (03Bh) 235
 Rebuild started (00Bh) 229
 Replacement drive capacity too small (02Eh) 234
 Sector repair completed (023h) 231
 SMART threshold exceeded (00Fh) 230
 SO-DIMM not compatible (037h) 235
 SO-DIMM not detected (038h) 235
 Source drive ECC error overwritten(02Ch) 234
 Source drive error occurred(02Dh) 234
 Spare capacity too small for some units (032h) 234
 Unclean shutdown detected (008h) 228
 Unit deleted (00Dh) 229
 Unit inoperable (01Eh) 230
 Unit number assignments lost (041h) 236
 Upgrade UDMA mode (022h) 231
 Verify completed(02Bh) 233
 Verify failed (02Ah) 233
 Verify fixed data/parity mismatch (036h) 235
 Verify not started 234
 Verify paused (03Dh) 236
 Verify started (029h) 233
 AEN messages 109, 175, 224
 AENDrive inserted (01Ah) 230
 Alarms page, 3DM 109
 alarms, viewing 175
 array roaming 5, 161, 163
 definition 243
 arrays 5
 definition 243
 moving from one controller to another 163
 removing in 3DM 161
 asterisk next to unit 88, 90
 auto initialization after power failure 179
 auto-carving 117, 121
 auto-carving policy
 setting in 3DM 96
 auto-rebuild policy 14, 117
 setting 120
 setting in 3DM 96
 auto-verify policy for units (3DM) 95
 auto-verify policy for units (setting in 3DM) 145
 available drives, 3DM 106

B

background rebuild rate
 definition 243
 background tasks
 about 177
 background task rate in 3DM 94
 background task rate, setting 183
 definition 13
 prioritizing 185
 scheduling 184
 Backup DCB read error detected (043h) 237
 Battery capacity is below error level (059h) 240
 Battery capacity is below warning level (058h) 240
 Battery capacity test completed (050h) 239
 Battery capacity test is overdue (053h) 240
 Battery capacity test started (04Eh) 239

- Battery charging completed (056h) 240
- Battery charging fault (057h) 240
- Battery charging started (055h) 240
- Battery health check completed (052h) 239
- Battery health check failed (05Dh) 241
- Battery health check started (051h) 239
- Battery is not present (05Bh) 240
- Battery is present (05Ah) 240
- Battery is weak (05Ch) 241
- Battery temperature is high (04Bh) 238
- Battery temperature is low (04Ah) 238
- Battery temperature is normal (049h) 238
- Battery temperature is too high (04Dh) 238
- Battery temperature is too low (04Ch) 238
- Battery voltage is high (046h) 237
- Battery voltage is low (045h) 237
- Battery voltage is normal (044h) 237
- Battery voltage is too high (048h) 238
- Battery voltage is too low (047h) 237
- BBU
 - testing battery capacity 219
 - viewing battery information 218
- BIOS Manager, using 55
- Blink checkbox in 3DM 91
- blinking LEDs (drive locate) 196
- Boot volume size
 - definition 243
- boot volume size, specifying 130
- bootable unit, specifying 58
- browser requirements, 3DM 66
- Buffer ECC error corrected (039h) 235
- Buffer integrity test failed (024h) 232

C

- Cache flush failed 232
- Cache synchronization completed 05Eh) 241
- Cache synchronization failed 241
- Cache synchronization skipped (04Fh) 239
- cancel rebuild 194
- carve size 117, 121
 - setting in 3DM 97
- carving factor, *See* carve size
- Compliance and Conformity 249
- configuration
 - changing 151
 - definition 244
 - exit and save modifications 57
 - exit without saving 57
- configuring a controller 115
- configuring units 127
 - first time, in BIOS 19
- Continue on Error During Rebuild (setting in 3DM) 95
- controller
 - moving unit to another 163

- rescanning 171
- updating driver 200
 - FreeBSD 216
 - Red Hat 213
 - SuSE 214
 - Windows 207
- updating firmware
 - Windows 201
- Controller Details page, 3DM 86
- controller details, 3BM 116
- controller details, 3DM 115
- Controller error occurred (003h) 227
- controller ID number (definition) 244
- Controller Information screen 63
- controller information, viewing 115
- controller policies
 - overview 117
 - viewing 118
- Controller reset occurred (001h) 227
- Controller Settings page, 3DM 93
- Controller Summary page, 3DM 84
- create unit (definition) 244
- creating a unit
 - basic steps 19
 - configuration options 128
 - first time, in BIOS 19
- creating a unit, introduction 128
- customer support, contacting 221

D

- DCB checksum error detected (027h) 232
- DCB version unsupported (028h) 232
- DCB, definition 244
- Degraded unit (002h) 227
- delay between spin-up policy (viewing in 3DM) 97
- delete a unit 157, 161
- delete unit (definition) 244
- delete unit, 3DM 105
- destroy unit (definition) 244
- disable write cache on degraded array policy 117
- disable write cache on unit degrade policy (viewing in 3DM) 97
- disk arrays 58
- Disk Manager, using 65
- disk roaming 5
- distributed parity 5
- Downgrade UDMA mode (021h) 231
- drive
 - adding in 3DM 168
 - capacity considerations 10
 - checking status in 3DM 173
 - coercion 11
 - drive configuration block (DCB) 232
 - drive ID (definition) 244

- drive number (definition) 244
- removing in 3DM 169
- types 3
- viewing SMART data 176
- Drive ECC error reported (026h) 232
- Drive error detected (00Ah) 229
- Drive Information page, 3DM 90
- Drive inserted (01Ah) 230
- drive locate 14, 91, 196
- Drive not supported (030h) 234
- Drive power on reset detected (03Ah) 235
- Drive removed (019h) 230
- Drive timeout detected (009h) 229
- driver
 - compiling for Linux 48
 - current version, determining 199
 - installation 29
 - installation under FreeBSD 49
 - installation under Linux 38
 - installation under Windows 30
 - updating 200
 - FreeBSD 216
 - Red Hat 213
 - SuSE 214
 - Windows 207
- driver diskette
 - creating (Linux) 40
 - creating (Windows) 31
- drives per spin-up policy (setting in 3DM) 97
- dynamic sector repair 182, 231

E

- ECC error policy (definition) 245
- e-mail event notification, managing in 3DM 81, 113
- Enclosure Management Services (EMS), definition 245
- error correction 13
- error log, downloading 176
- error messages 224
- errors
 - how handled 182
 - viewing 176
- European Community Conformity 250
- export JBOD policy 117
- Export JBOD policy (viewing in 3DM) 97
- exporting
 - JBOD disks 125
- exporting unconfigured disks, 3BM 125

F

- FCC 249
- firmware
 - updating 200
 - updating in Windows 201

- Flash file system error detected (03Fh) 236
- Flash file system repaired (040h) 236
- FreeBSD driver
 - installation 49
 - updating 216

G

- grown defect, definition 245

H

- hardware installation, troubleshooting 222
- help, getting for 3BM 63
- hot spare 9
 - introduction 139
 - specifying 27
 - specifying in 3BM 140
 - specifying in 3DM 140
- hot swap 5
- hot swapping (definition) 245
- hotspare
 - hot spare (definition) 245

I

- incoming port number, 3DM 83, 114
- incomplete drives, deleting through 3BM 157, 159
- Incomplete unit detected (006h) 228
- initialization
 - about 177
 - auto initialization after power failure 179
 - background versus foreground 177
 - RAID 0 units 178
 - RAID 1 units 179
 - RAID 10 units 179
 - RAID 5 units 178
 - RAID 50 units 178
- Initialize completed(007h) 228
- Initialize failed (00Eh) 230
- Initialize paused (03Ch) 236
- Initialize started (00Ch) 229
- installation
 - overview 15, 19
 - troubleshooting
 - hardware 222
 - software 222
- installing
 - formatting 37
 - making units available 37
 - partitioning 37
- installing 3DM on
 - Linux 70
 - Windows 67
- Inter-IC bus, definition 245

J

JBOD 9, 27
JBOD disks
 exporting 125
JBOD policy (viewing in 3DM) 97

L

Linux driver
 compiling 48
 installation 38
 updating 213, 214
logging in 75

M

main screen, 3BM 58
main screen, 3DM 76
maintaining units 173
Maintenance page, 3DM 100
media scans 13
media scans (verification of non-redundant units) 181
menus, 3DM 77
messages, error 224
migrating a unit 104, 152
 about 182
migration
 definition 246
Migration completed (035h) 235
Migration failed (034h) 235
Migration paused (03Eh) 236
Migration started (033h) 234
mirroring 5
motherboard boot sequence 28
Mozilla, setting up 66
Multi LUN support (auto-carving) 117, 121
multiple volumes in one unit 121

N

name of unit 88, 129
 assigning 96, 141
navigation, 3BM 59
NCQ (native command queuing)
 definition 246
NCQ policy (setting in 3DM) 95

O

Online Capacity Expansion (OCE),
 definition 246
operating system
 informing of changed configuration 155
Other Controller Settings, 3DM 96

P

page refresh
 3DM 114

frequency, 3DM 83
pages described, 3DM 78
parity, distributed 5
partitioning and formatting units 137
passwords, 3DM 80, 113
PCB (definition) 246
P-Chip (definition) 246
policies
 controller 117
 unit 142
port ID (definition) 246
preferences, 3DM 80
Prepare for shutdown (power-off)(020h)
 AEN
 Prepare for shutdown (power-off) (020h) 231
Primary DCB read error occurred(042h) 236

Q

Queuing policy (setting in 3DM) 95

R

RAID
 concepts and levels 5
 configurations 6
 configurations available 9
 determining level to use 9
 RAID 0 6
 RAID 1 7
 RAID 10 8
 RAID 50 8
RAID 5 7
RAID Level Migration (RLM)
 about 182
 changing level 153
 definition 247
 overview 152
Rebuild completed (005h) 228
Rebuild failed (004h) 227
Rebuild paused (03Bh) 235
Rebuild started (00Bh) 229
rebuild task schedule (definition) 246
rebuild unit
 3BM 191
 3DM 104, 190
 about 180
 cancelling and restarting 194
 introduction 189
redundant units, about 181
remote access
 3DM 114
 enabling in 3DM 82
remote viewing, 3DM 74
remove drive, 3DM 103
remove or delete a unit 105, 157, 161
Replacement drive capacity too small (02Eh) 234

rescan controller 171
3DM 101
roaming, array 161, 163

S

scheduled background tasks 13
scheduling
background tasks 184
prioritizing background tasks 185
task duration 185
Scheduling page, 3DM 98
screens described, 3DM 78
Sector repair completed (023h) 231
self-tests
about 183
about for 3DM 99
definition 247
selecting 188
Settings page, 3DM 112
single disk 9
SMART 175
data, viewing 176
monitoring 13
SMART Details page, 3DM 92
SMART threshold exceeded(00Fh) 230
SO-DIMM not compatible (037h) 235
SO-DIMM not detected (038h) 235
software installation, troubleshooting 222
some data lost (025h) 232
some data lost (05Fh) 241
Source drive ECC error overwritten (02Ch) 234
Source drive error occurred (02Dh) 234
Spare capacity is too small for some units (032h) 234
spin-up policy, delay between spin-ups (viewing in 3DM) 97
spin-up policy, number of drives (setting in 3DM) 97
stagger time (definition) 247
staggered method 118
staggered spin-up 117
staggered spinup, 3BM 13
starting 3BM 55
starting 3DM in Linux 73
StorSave profile 14
StorSave Profile (setting in 3DM) 95
stripe size (definition) 247
striping 5
definition 247
subunit
definition 247
system requirements 3

T

task duration, scheduling 185

task schedules
about, 3DM 99
adding 188
removing 187
turning on and off 185, 186
viewing 185
Technical Support 251
troubleshooting 221
3DM 223
hardware installation 222
software installation 222
TwinStor 8

U

UDMA mode, definition 247
ultra DMA protocol 231
Unclean shutdown detected (008h) 228
unconfigured disks, exporting, 3BM 125
uninstalling 3DM on
Linux 72
Windows 70
unit
checking status in 3DM 173
configuring 127
creating a unit
in 3DM 130, 131
introduction 128
creating a unit for the first time, in BIOS 19
creating in 3BM 133
definition 5, 248
deleting a unit 157
in 3BM 159
in 3DM 157
expanding capacity 154
maintaining 173
maintenance, 3DM 102
moving from one controller to another 163
name 88, 96, 129
naming 141
ordering in 3BM 137
partitioning and formatting 137
policies, setting 142
policies, setting in 3DM 94
rebuilding a unit 189
in 3BM 191
in 3DM 190
removing in 3DM 161
removing vs. deleting 157, 161
unit number (definition) 247
verifying a unit 194
in 3BM 195
in 3DM 195
volumes 90
write cache, 3DM 94

- write cache, introduction 143
- Unit deleted (00Dh) 229
- Unit Details page, 3DM 89
- unit ID
 - definition 247
- Unit Information page, 3DM 87
- Unit inoperable (01Eh) 230
- unit never initialized (02Fh) 234
- Unit number assignments lost (041h) 236
- Unit Operational (01Fh)
 - AEN
 - Unit Operational (01Fh) 230
- unit policies
 - overview 142
- unlocking drives configured on a 9000 series controller 164
- Unsupported DCB, indication on drive 157, 159
- update utility 202
- Upgrade UDMA mode (022h) 231

V

- verification 13
 - about 181
 - error handling 182
 - media scans 181
 - non-redundant units 181
 - redundant units 181
- Verify completed(02Bh) 233
- Verify failed (02Ah) 233
- Verify fixed data/parity mismatch (036h) 235
- Verify not started 234
- Verify paused (03Dh) 236
- Verify started (029h) 233
- verify unit, 3DM 103
- verifying
 - definition 248
- verifying units 194
- viewing 3DM remotely 74
- volume
 - specifying a boot volumen size 130
- volumes
 - in a unit 90
 - resulting from auto-carvings 90
- volumes, multiple 121

W

- Warranty 251
- WHQL 250
- working in 3BM 59
- write cache 14, 94
 - disable on unit degrade 126
 - disable on unit degrade policy (viewing in 3DM) 97
 - disable write cache on degraded array policy 117

